

Oksana Karpiuk

# ENGLISH

PUPIL'S  
BOOK

6





Рекомендовано Міністерством освіти і науки України  
(Лист Міністерства освіти і науки України № 6/2-56 від 20.06.2006 р.)



***Автор висловлює щирю подяку:***

*Доктору Ен Кетс (США), міжнародному експерту в галузі викладання іноземних мов та розробки навчальних видань з іноземних мов.*

*Методисту Сакіні Алі (США), спеціалісту з викладання англійської мови, волонтеру Американського Корпусу Миру.*

*Вчителям та учням середньої комунальної спеціалізованої школи № 3 м. Тернополя із поглибленим вивченням іноземних мов, які підтримали і сприяли реалізації проекту.*

**Карп'юк О. Д.**

К26 Англійська мова: Підручник для 6 класу загальноосвітніх навчальних закладів. - Тернопіль "Лібра Terra", 2007. - 102 с. : Іл.  
ISBN 978-966-8790-30-0



# CONTENTS

Introduction	p.4-11	HELLO AGAIN!
Unit 1	p.12-27	WE NEED INFORMATION
Unit 2	p.28-43	SCHOOL LIFE
Unit 3	p.44-59	BIGGER! STRONGER! FASTER!
Unit 4	p.60-75	ROUND THE CALENDAR
Unit 5	p.76-91	ON THE MOVE
Unit 6	p.92-107	AROUND THE WORLD
Unit 7	p.108-123	WELCOME TO UKRAINE!
Unit 8	p.124-139	SAVE YOUR PLANET!
Unit 9	p.140-155	HELLO, SUMMER HOLIDAYS!
Appendix	p.156-163	READER'S BAG
	p.164-173	GRAMMAR REFERENCE
	p.174-190	VOCABULARY
	p.191	IRREGULAR VERBS





# INTRODUCTION

## Lesson 1

### HELLO AGAIN!



#### 1. Listen and read.

Hello! I am Taras. I'm 11. I've got a sister. Her name is Olena. She's younger than I am. I love taking pictures and playing football. English is my favourite lesson at school.



Hi! I'm Ivan. I'm 11. I've got an elder brother. His name is Mykola. He taught me to use the Internet. My parents bought me a computer last summer. I like playing games on it. And I really like English. It helps me to communicate with kids around the world.

Hello! My name's Chrystyna. I'm 11. I haven't got any brothers or sisters but I've got a dog. His name is Jack, and he's great! I've got a computer, too. But I am better at working on computers than Ivan is. I can print and make pictures. I can type articles in English.



Hi! I'm Lilia. I'm 11. Taras, Ivan and Christina are my classmates. They are my best friends. We make "English Bridge" newspaper for kids like we are. We do it in English. It helps us to make new friends. We've got lots of e-mail letters from children all over the world<sup>1</sup>. And one more thing, we usually use our English names in the newspaper: Terry, John, Chris and Lilly.

<sup>1</sup>from all over the world — з усього світу



What's your name in English?<sup>1</sup>

How many brothers and sisters have you got?

What do you like doing?

What's your favourite subject at school?



Nataly  
Laura  
Sally  
Jane  
Nick

### English Names

Nancy Max  
Helen Janet  
Andrew Peter  
Mary Tom  
Sam Jack  
Willy Kate  
Alex Willy

### Ukrainian Names

Olena Pavlo Maxym  
Kateryna Zhanna Nina  
Maria Larysa Natalia  
Semen Svitlana Zhenia  
Vitaliy Tolik  
Andriy Petro  
Oleksandr Mykola



**3. Write out three Ukrainian boys' and three girls' names from the list above. Write what they are in English.**

**Example:** Myshko is Mike in English.

**4. Read the "Brush up!" box and say when the 's stands for is and when for genitive 's?**

- 1) what's
- 2) my mother's name
- 3) my name's
- 4) our newspaper's called
- 5) Helen's pet



### BRUSH UP!

Genitive<sup>2</sup> **s**

my brother's name  
my parents' house

Genitive **of**

the name **of** my school

**5. Write about yourself.**

My name's ... I'm ... and ...

I've got ... I like ... and ...

My favourite ... I'm good at ...



## Homework

Workbook (WB) ex.1 - p.3

<sup>1</sup> If you can't find a similar name in English use your Ukrainian name.

<sup>2</sup> genitive [ˈdʒenitiv] — родовий відмінок



## Lesson 2

### THE "ENGLISH BRIDGE" FRIENDS



a) Jack

1. Look at the map. Where do the "English Bridge" friends live?  
Ask and answer about the children. Use the letters.

**Example:** A: Where is Jack from?

B: He's from Canada.

He's Canadian.



2. Say which of the words are the names of the countries.  
Write out the names of the nationalities.

Australian [ɒst'reɪliən], Great Britain, the U.S.A., Japanese ['dʒæpə'ni:z], Canada ['kænədə], British, Italian [ɪ'tæliən], Russian, Australia [ɒs'treɪliə], Germany ['dʒə:məni], American, Italy ['ɪtəli], German, France, French, Ukraine, Canadian [kə'neɪdiən], Ukrainian, Russia ['rʌʃə], Japan [dʒə'pæn]

a  
Canada

b  
the USA

3. Name the countries where people speak these languages.

French, English, Spanish, Japanese, German, Italian

**Write as in the example:** People speak French in France and ...

4. Read and find out what languages the children study at school. Ask and answer about it.

A: What foreign language does Ivan study at school?

B: He studies English.

Ivan studies a) ... at school.

Tom studies d) ... at school.

Oksanka studies a) ... and b) ... at school.

Gustav studies c) ... and a) ... at school.

Bill studies k) ...

Jack studies h) ...

Robert studies i) ...

Gregory studies a) ...

Arturo studies b) ... and a) ...

Mary studies c) ...

Yoko studies j) ...

**Use the following:**

- a) English
- b) German
- c) French
- d) Spanish
- h) Ukrainian
- i) Japanese
- j) American English
- k) Russian





b) Bill



c) Tom



d) Robert



e) Gustav



f) Gregory



g) Arturo



**5. Speak of the reasons<sup>1</sup> why we should study foreign languages. Use the following:**

- to know more;
- to understand other people;
- to have more friends;
- to travel to different countries;
- to read books in different languages;
- to work and play on a computer.



## Homework

Workbook (WB) ex.2 - p.4

<sup>1</sup> a reason ['ri:z(ə)n] — причина



## Lesson 3

### PERSONAL INFORMATION

#### 1. Match the questions with the answers.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1) How old is she?<br>2) Where are you from?<br>3) What is her job?<br>4) When is your birthday?<br>5) What nationality are you?<br>6) What are you good at?<br>7) Why do you study English? | a) It helps to have a lot of friends.<br>b) I'm good at Maths.<br>c) It's on the 5th of April.<br>d) I'm from England.<br>e) She is an editor.<br>f) She is nine.<br>g) I'm Ukrainian. |
|--|--|

#### 2. Put the dialogue in the correct order. Act out in pairs.



- She is my e-mail friend.
- Hello, what are you doing?
- Who are the other people in the photo?
- She is from Australia.
- I'm writing a letter to Tina.
- They are Tina's family.
- Oh, where is she from?
- Have you got a photo of her?
- Who's Tina?
- Yes, here you are.

#### 3. Read the e-mail and use the scheme<sup>1</sup> to say who they are.

cousin, grandparents, uncle, aunt, parents, pet

DELETE
PRINT
FORWARD
REPLY
DONE

Dear Steve,

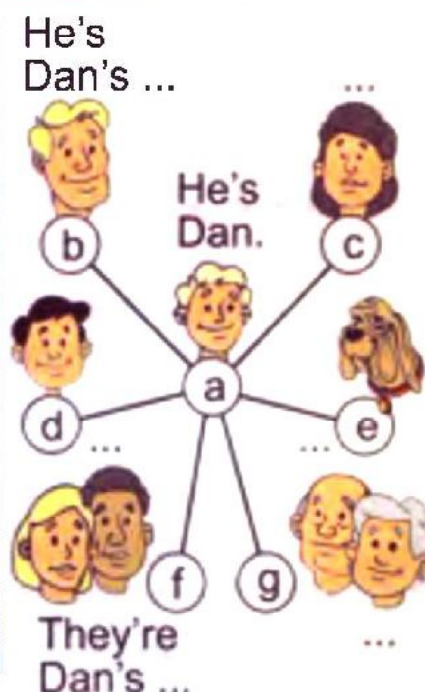
Here is the photo of my family.

The man with blond hair is my mother's brother.

The woman with black curly hair is his wife. Her name is Betty. Guess where I am. I've got a straight blond hair like my mother's. The other boy is Betty's son. My dad is with our dog. My mum is near them.

My grandmother and grandfather are inside the house. We like gathering together at weekends. Write and tell me about your family.

Bye, Dan.



<sup>1</sup>scheme [ski:m] — cxema



#### 4. Draw Robert's family tree. Use the clues' below.

The names of Robert's relatives are Antonio, Steve, Danny, Barbara, Laura, Silvia, Debora and Lisa.

Robert hasn't got any brother. Antonio and Barbara have four children. Robert's father's name is Steve. Danny is Steve's brother. Laura and Silvia are sisters. Danny has two sisters. Debora's children's names are Lisa and Robert.



**husband** ['hʌzbənd]

**nephew** ['nevju:]

**niece** [ni:s]

**relative** ['relatɪv]

**relationship** [rɪ'leɪʃənʃɪp]

**roots** [ru:ts]

**wife** ['waɪf]

### PROJECT



### WORK

#### MEET MY FAMILY

##### 1) Write about your family and relatives.

- find a photo of your family and relatives;
- write some information about these people in the photo (their names, their relationships to you, their jobs)

This is my niece.  
Her name is Victoria or Vicky for short. She is three. Vicky is a pretty little girl with short curly hair and blue eyes.

This is my dear granny. She is very kind and wise. She lives in the village.

This is my uncle George. He hasn't got a wife or children. He is young, strong and handsome.



##### 2) Draw a Family

Tree and describe the people in it.

##### 3) Display your poster in class.



## Homework

Pupil's Book (PB) ex.6 - p.9

<sup>1</sup> a clue [klu:] — підказка

<sup>2</sup> to arrange [ə'reɪndʒ] — скласти, упорядкувати, організувати

<sup>3</sup> to stick [stɪk] — прикріпити, приколотити



## Lesson 4

# BRUSH UP YOUR GRAMMAR!

### 1. Read and compare.

I read the book yesterday.

I was reading a book at 7 p.m. yesterday.

**Brush up the following:**

#### PAST SIMPLE TENSE

позначає дію, що відбулась або відбувалась із певною регулярністю у минулому

*I went to school yesterday.*

*I went to school when I was seven.*

#### PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE

позначає дію, що тривала у конкретний час у минулому; цей час позначається обставиною часу або іншою дією у Past Simple

*I was playing tennis at 3 p.m.*

*I was playing tennis when John came.*

### 2. Group up the sentences into the following columns.

*Past Continuous Tense / Past Simple Tense*

- 1) I was washing up at 7 p.m.
- 2) He never did it.
- 3) My family went to the seaside last summer.
- 4) She didn't put her hat on.
- 5) Was he learning grammar at that time?
- 6) When did you feed the parrot?
- 7) The baby was sleeping in the afternoon.
- 8) They were not playing, they were doing their homework.

### 3. Match these sentences with the tenses.

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| 1) In this photo I am playing the piano.     | a) Present Simple     |
| 2) She was working hard when they came.      | b) Past Simple        |
| 3) He does his morning exercises every day.  | c) Future Simple      |
| 4) It was a nice birthday party.             | d) Present Continuous |
| 5) We'll invite some famous people for this. | e) Past Continuous    |



#### 4. Correct the mistakes.

- 1) I no go to school every day.
- 2) Alison is no doing her homework.
- 3) They not are talking to their friends.
- 4) Sara don't like Nature Studies.
- 5) Mark doesn't plays volleyball.

#### 5. Make questions with the words.

- 1) go / does / where / your brother / to school?
- 2) they / volleyball / playing / are ?
- 3) go / to a chess club / do / you ?
- 4) doing / Jenny / is / what / at the moment?
- 5) you / will / tomorrow / us / visit?

#### 6. Read and complete as in the example. Speak about your daily programme during your last summer holidays.

**Example:** I usually get up at 7 o'clock.

*But I got up at 8.30 in summer.*

1. I usually have ... for breakfast.  
But I had ... on holidays.
2. As a rule, I ... once a week. But I ... on holidays.
3. I spend the evenings at home during the school year.  
But I ... in summer.
4. My parents want me to ... on my weekdays.  
They didn't make me ... when I was on holidays.
5. I usually go to bed at 9.30 in the evening.  
I could go to bed at ... in summer.

#### 7. Fill in 'some' or 'any'.

- a) Have you got ... brothers or sisters?
- b) We don't need ... bread.
- c) There are ... flowers in the vase.
- d) I want ... butter because I'm going to bake a cake.
- e) Is there ... juice in the bottle?
- f) We don't need ... eggs.
- g) There are ... dirty plates in the sink.
- h) There isn't ... soup on the plate.





# Unit 1 WE NEED INFORMATION!

## Lessons 1-2



**1. Look, listen and talk. Work in pairs.**  
**Use the phrases from the box.**

**Chris:** I read lots of children's letters last week. They share ideas how to be good at learning foreign languages.

**Lilly:** Are there any really good ones?

**Chris:** Yes, there are. Why don't we start a new column or a box with the information like that? We can call it "A Box of Advice", for example ...

**Lilly:** I think "Helpful Tips" is better.

**Chris:** I agree. It's really very good.



### Making suggestions

- *Let's try to do it.*
- *What about the information on animals?*
- *Why don't we use the Internet?*
- *We can make a school newspaper.*
- *We would like to send e-mail letters.*

### 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) How many letters did Chris read last week?
- 2) What do children write in their letters?
- 3) Are there any good ideas for language learners in them?
- 4) What kind of a new column do the girls want to start in the newspaper?
- 5) Are there any suggestions for the heading?



**3. Work in pairs. Imagine you're going to make a school magazine.**

- A.** is making suggestions.  
**B.** agrees or disagrees.

### Use the following:

- I (don't) think it's good (useful, interesting, really good).
- Great idea.
- I've got a better idea.





#### 4. Look, listen and act out. Work in a group of four.

**Chris:** Hello, Terry! Hi, John!  
We'd like to make a new column  
"Helpful Tips" for learners.

**Terry:** Great. But why don't we  
make articles about different  
subjects — history and  
geography, for example?

**John:** ... or about more general  
things like sport and nature?

**Terry:** We think it would be  
interesting ...

**John:** ... and useful.

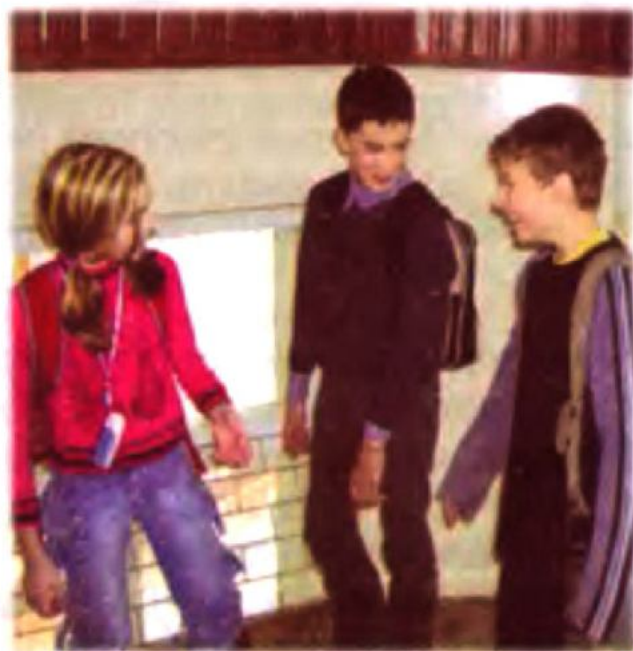
**Lilly:** We'll need lots of information!

**Terry:** We can use the Internet,  
different books and magazines. I think it's a great project.

**Chris:** It'll be a lot of work. We'll need lots of time!

**John:** Our friends will help us!

**Lilly:** I think it's a good idea. What about going to the library?



#### 5. Say if it is true or false.

- 1) The boys would like to make articles about foreign languages.
- 2) John likes sport: he would like to write about it.
- 3) Lilly doesn't think the articles about history and geography are interesting.
- 4) Terry is afraid of work.
- 5) This project will take lots of time.
- 6) Children should go to the library.

#### 6. Imagine your friend needs information about famous people. Give him/her advice.

You'll need ...  
You should ...  
What about ...?  
Why don't you ...?  
You can ...



#### NEW VOCABULARY

- **advice** [əd'vaɪs]
- a column** ['kɒləm]
- a heading** ['hedɪŋ]
- history** ['hɪstəri]
- a library** ['laɪbrəri]
- a subject** ['sʌbdʒɪkt]
- a suggestion** [sə'dʒestʃən]
- geography** [dʒi'ɒɡrəfi]
- to advise** [əd'vaɪz]
- to share** [ʃeə]
- to suggest** [sə'dʒest]
- **to give advice**



#### Homework

WB ex.2 - p.7



## GRAMMAR POINT

## Modal Verbs

Модальні дієслова передають ставлення до дії, яку виражають інші дієслова, що стоять після них.  
Увага! Після модальних дієслів частка **to** не вживається.

Але: **have to** — I have to do it.

I **can** (можу, вмію) play volleyball. (вміння, здатність)

You **should** (варто, слід) take a bus. (порада)

We **must** (повинен) feed the bird. (обов'язок)

They **have to** (повинні) do their homework. (зобов'язання)

**May** (можу) I sit here? (дозвіл)

**Could** (чи не могли б) you close the door? (ввічливе прохання)

We **may** (можливо) not play tennis today. (можливість)

The weather **might** (ймовірно) not be good. (ймовірність)

### 1. Give advice to these people. Use 'should' or 'shouldn't'.

**Example:** — I've got a toothache.

— You *should* go to the dentist.

You *shouldn't* eat many sweets and cakes.

- 1) I am cold.
- 2) I've got a headache.
- 3) I have to find some information.
- 4) I can't swim.
- 5) I'm too fat.
- 6) I'm tired.
- 7) I don't want to do my homework.
- 8) I would like to play on a computer.

### 2. Fill in the sentences with 'may'/'might' or 'may not'/'might not'.

**Example:** The geography teacher was ill yesterday.

She (not go) **might not** go to school today.

- 1) It's my dad's birthday next week. We (buy) ... him a new suitcase.
- 2) My brother is going to Paris for a week. I (give) ... him my new camera.
- 3) There are some black clouds in the sky. It (rain) ... today.
- 4) Peter doesn't study very much. He (not get) ... a good mark tomorrow.
- 5) I'm very tired. I (not go) ... to the cinema.
- 6) She isn't feeling well. She (not go) ... to school tomorrow.



### 3. Remember your School Rules.

**Speak of what pupils must and mustn't do in school.**

### 4. Read the English proverbs and explain<sup>1</sup> their meanings<sup>2</sup>.

- 1) Friends may meet, but mountains never.
- 2) A fool may ask more questions than a clever man can answer.
- 3) If we can't as we would, we must do as we can.
- 4) People who live in glass houses should not throw<sup>3</sup> stones.
- 5) You may lead a horse to water but you can't make (змусити) it drink.
- 6) A man can die (вмерти) but once.
- 7) He who likes to eat fruit must climb the tree.

### 5. Choose the correct modal verb to complete the sentence.

- 1) "She is be at home now!" mother said angrily. a) should b) must
- 2) His English is not good, he should study better. a) should b) may
- 3) Can I have some cookies, please? a) might b) may
- 4) You can't write on pages! a) can't b) mustn't
- 5) They have to wake up early to be at school in time. a) have to b) may
- 6) I think she might come to us tomorrow. a) should b) might

### 6. Choose the correct verb form.

Mary: I (**might / should**) go to the disco tonight. Would you like to come?

Kate: Oh, I'd like to go, but I (**may not / have to**) do my homework.

Jane: We (**should / don't have to**) help that old lady with her shopping.

Liz: You're right. Her bags look heavy. She (**might / should**) drop them.

Bob: There's a good film on TV at ten. I don't (**have to / might**) watch it.

Father: You (**may / should**) be in bed at ten o'clock!

Bob: But I (**don't have to / shouldn't**) go to school tomorrow.

Mike: I (**have to / may**) be at school by nine.

Mother: Hurry up, boy! It's twenty to nine now. You (**should / don't have to**) get up earlier.

Mike: You're right, mum! I (**might not / shouldn't**) get to school on time today.



## Homework

PB ex.5 - p.15

<sup>1</sup>to explain [ɪk'spleɪn] — пояснювати

<sup>2</sup>a meaning ['mi:nɪŋ] — значення

<sup>3</sup>to throw [θrəʊ] — кидати



## Lesson 4

## 1. Read and discuss in groups.

## IS LIBRARY A HOUSE OF INFORMATION?

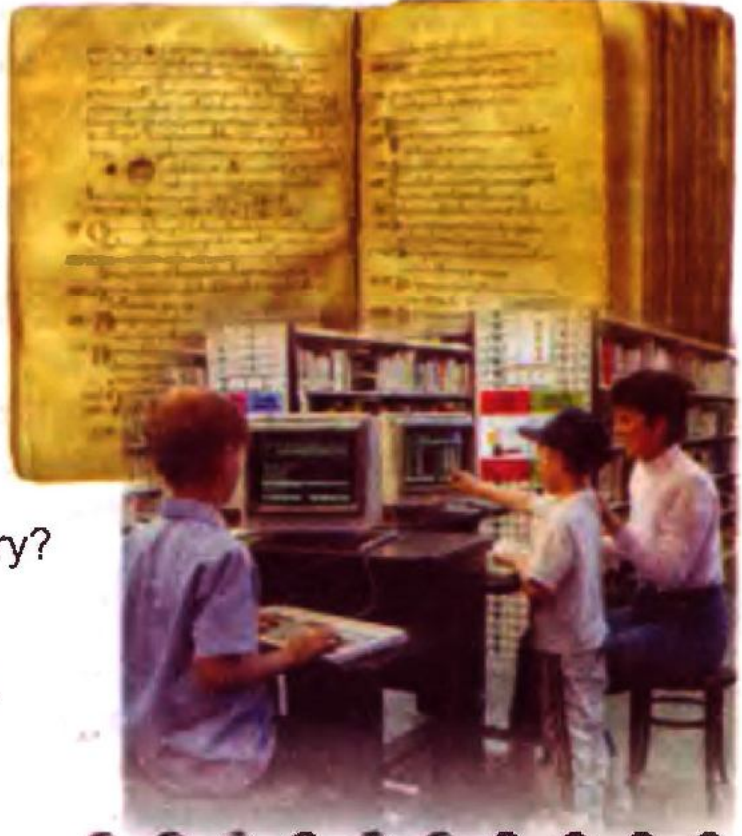
Libraries appeared in ancient times in Egypt ['i:dʒɪpt], Greece and Rome [rəʊm]. Libraries of the past had collections of manuscripts<sup>1</sup> and books.

Today library is a centre of all kinds of information: books, dictionaries, reference books, tapes and records, videos and electronic books.

There are libraries in small towns and large cities, in schools and universities. Some libraries have card catalogs of books, some of them store the information in computers.

If the library is in a large city, you might use the Internet there. To do this you should have some skills of the computer user.

So, if you need a piece of information, why not visit the library?



## 2. Complete the sentences according to the text above.

- 1) Libraries appeared in ...
- 2) Books, ..., ..., ... and records are different kinds of information.
- 3) Some libraries store the ...
- 4) You might use ... ..
- 5) You should have some ... .. to use the Internet.
- 6) When you need a piece of information, go to the library!



## NEW VOCABULARY

- a dictionary ['dɪkʃənəri]
- a librarian [laɪ'breəriən]
- a reference ['refərəns] book
- a university [ˌjuːnɪ'vɜːsɪti]
- ancient ['eɪnʃənt]
- to appear [ə'piə]
- a piece [piːs] of information
- to store [stɔː] the information
- to join [dʒɔɪn] the library

## 3. Speak about the libraries. Say:

- a) what library you go to;
- b) when you joined the library;
- c) why you joined this library;
- d) how you choose books there;
- e) how the librarian can help you.

<sup>1</sup>a manuscript ['mænjʊskript] - манускрипт, стародавній рукопис



#### 4. Read and think why you have to keep to the rules.

- wash your hands before you begin to read
- do not write on pages
- do not make drawings in a book
- do not make dog's ears in a book
- do not tear<sup>1</sup> the pages
- do not lose your books — that means you lose your friends
- return the book on time

#### 5. Ask and answer.



Do you go to the library?  
 What kind of books do you like to read?  
 Can you keep library books long?  
 Do books need much care?  
 Who can help you to choose a book?

#### Use the following:

stories	book on	history	
novels		geography	
fairy tales	books poems stories	about	great people
legends			famous places
fables <sup>2</sup>			space
articles			different countries
poems			

#### 6. Fill in the sentences with missing words from the box.

a librarian, subjects, a piece of advice, fairy tales, reference books,  
 a book, stories, library, history, poems, dictionaries, geography

Mothers read ... to their children since their early years. Teachers lead the first formers to the ... to teach them love for reading. Schoolchildren can choose and take some books of ... or ... to read at home. ... can give them a good ... on what book to choose. Older schoolchildren need books on different ... : on Nature Studies or languages, on ... or .... There are newspapers, magazines, ..., ... and other books in the library. You can always come and get ... you need.



### Homework

WB ex.2 - p.9

<sup>1</sup>to tear [teə] — рвати, розривати

<sup>2</sup>a fable ['feɪbl] — байка



## Lesson 5

## 1. Read and learn useful tips below.

Hello, dear "English Bridge"!

I'd like to share my experience<sup>1</sup> of having an e-mail friend.

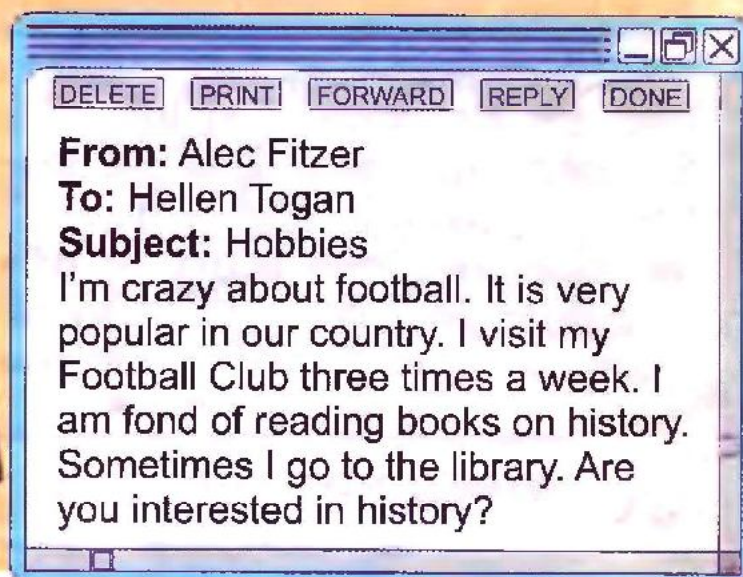
I was bad at English and I wasn't very good at Computer Studies. My English teacher gave me a good piece of advice to use the Internet and make an e-mail friend. I found the "E-mail Friends' Club" website and chose the name of my future friend. It was Helen from Switzerland ['switsələnd]. We started sending e-mails to each other. We're good friends now. My English is much better. I'm very good at using the computer now, too. Here are some useful tips on how to write e-mail letters.

Yours,

Alec Fitzer.

### Writing an e-mail

1. Give a subject to your e-mail.
2. Start with greetings.
3. Make your e-mail short. E-mails are usually not too long.
4. Try to make your ideas clear.
5. Imagine your friend when you are writing your e-mail.



<sup>1</sup>experience [ɪk'spiəriəns] — досвід



## 2. Say if it is true or false.

- 1) Alec was bad at English.
- 2) Alec was very good at Computer Studies.
- 3) His elder brother gave him good advice.
- 4) Alec found the name of his e-mail friend on a website.
- 5) Helen is Alec's e-mail friend.
- 6) Alec is very bad at English now.
- 7) Alec shares good tips on how to write e-mail letters.

## 3. Tell Alec's story using words of order from the "Brush up!" box.



Alec was bad ... ..  
... .. first. Then ... ..



**BRUSH UP!**

first, next, then,  
after that, finally

## 4. Ask and answer about e-mails.

What should I do first?  
What should I do next?  
And then/after that?  
What should I do finally?



## 5. Match and use the right prepositions to make up sentences.

We are good	about	music.
He is keen	in	speaking English.
They are fond	at	reading books.
She is interested	of	meeting friends.
I am crazy	on	sport.

## 6. Write an e-mail to Alec Fitzer. Use the phrases from the box.



DELETE PRINT FORWARD REPLY DONE

From:  
To:  
Subject:

### Talking About Hobbies

- be keen on
- be good at
- be crazy about
- be fond of
- be interested in



**Homework**

WB ex.6 - p.19



## Lesson 6

### 1. a) Before listening discuss the following items.

- 1) Can you use a computer?
- 2) Do you go to a computer centre?
- 3) Have you got a computer at home?
- 4) Do you play computer games?
- 5) Can you work on a computer?
- 6) How much time did you spend on the computer yesterday?
- 7) Is your mum sometimes angry with you because of spending too much (на́дто ба́рато) time on the computer? If yes, why?



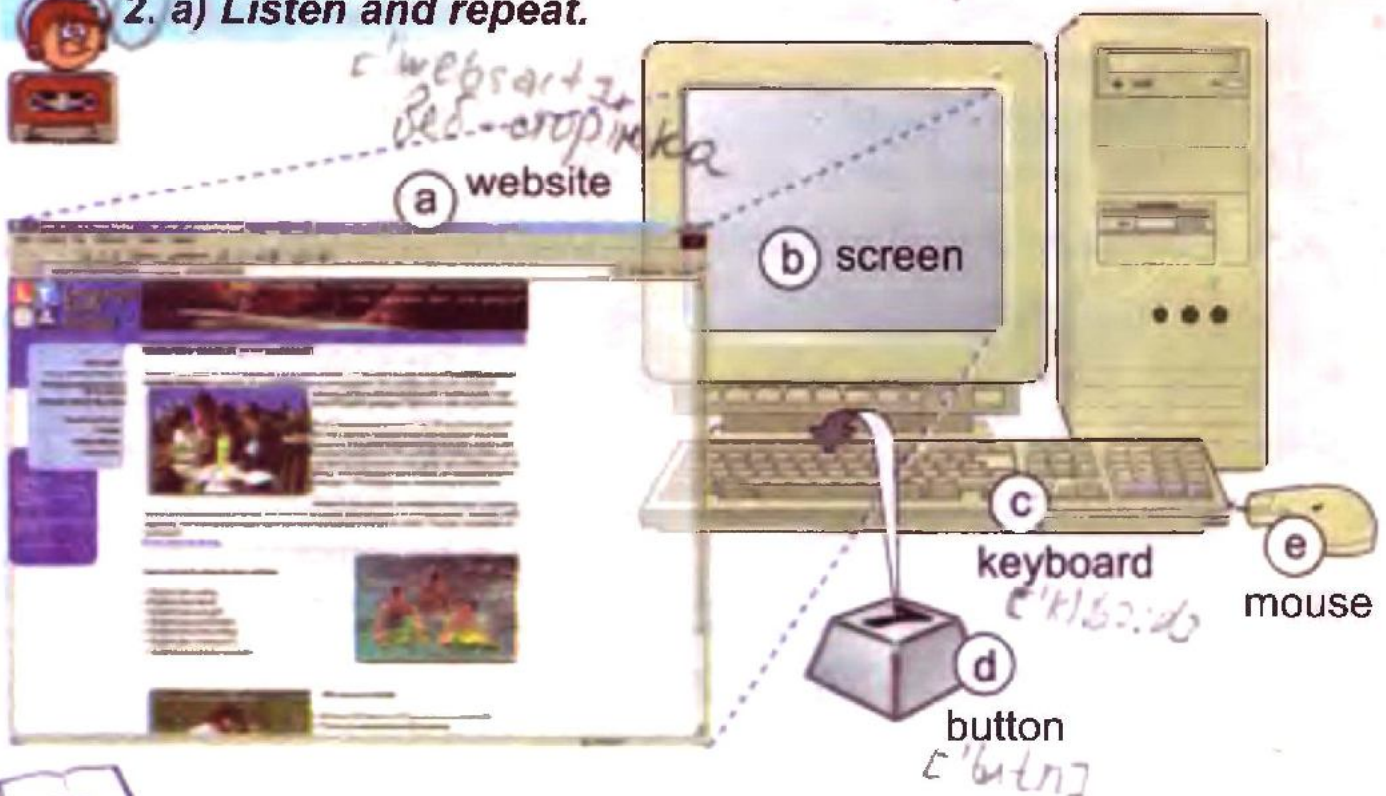
### b) Listen and answer the questions below.



- 1) Who is worried about the children? Why?
- 2) What did her children do after school yesterday?
- 3) Did they go out to ride bikes?
- 4) How many hours did Leo play on a computer?
- 5) Did they communicate with friends?
- 6) What advice can you give to the mother?
- 7) Do your parents worry about you? Why?



### 2. a) Listen and repeat.





**b) Fill in the sentences with the words from the box.**

button, keyboard, screen, mouse, website

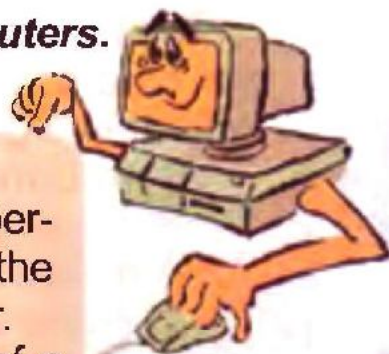
You should start your computer first by pressing the start button. Then connect to the Internet. Use the keyboard to type in the name of the website you are interested in. To move about the website use the mouse. Next click on "E-mail Friends Contacts". If you want to send e-mails to friends around the world complete the form. Send your e-mail finally.

**3. Get to know' more information about computers. Answer the questions on the right.**

Computers store information. They can work quickly. Computers help to work in hospitals, supermarkets, offices and banks. They print tickets at the stations. Librarians look for books on a computer.

You can connect with others with the help of a computer. Computers help children to learn and practise at school.

Some computers can write what you say to them. Computers are real helpers!



- 1. What can computers do?
- 2. Where do computers help?

**4. Have a discussion on computers. Work in groups.**

- 1) Do you have Computer Studies at school?
- 2) Does your school use computers in learning languages?
- 3) In what ways can computers help to learn a foreign language?



**5. Sing the song.**

**SHOW ME YOUR FACE**

I am going to send an e-mail  
Although I can't see your face.  
I'm going to meet you some day  
Out in time and space.

*Refrain:*

Show me your face.  
Am I asking much?  
Out in time and space  
All I need is a human touch.

I'm going to search for night and day,  
I'm going to contact you.  
Can you help me to find the way  
To make all my dreams come true?

*Refrain.*



**Homework**

WB ex.2 - p.11

'to get to know — познайомитись, дізнатись





## 1. Listen and read.

A GIGGLE<sup>1</sup> BOX AND A LEAKY FAUCET<sup>2</sup>

after Louis Sachar

Every day after lunch Mrs. Jewls read a story to the class. Dana hated stories.

The last book was the story about a pig. It was very funny. All the children laughed, but Dana couldn't stop laughing. John called her 'a giggle box'.

When Dana broke out laughing<sup>3</sup> at the lesson, John said: "There goes the giggle box."

She hated John.

The other story was very sad. Dana couldn't stop crying. John called her 'a leaky faucet'. "Who will fix the leaky faucet?" he asked. The bell rang. Dana walked up the stairs to Mrs. Jewls's room. Mrs. Jewls rang her bell, and all the children sat quietly. The teacher was reading a story about a little baby-animal. The story was sad because a car killed his mother.

Dana cried.

The next day Dana came up to Mrs. Jewls for a talk.

"Can I go out when you read?" asked Dana.

"Why?" asked Mrs. Jewls.

"I hate stories," said Dana. "I laugh and cry too much."

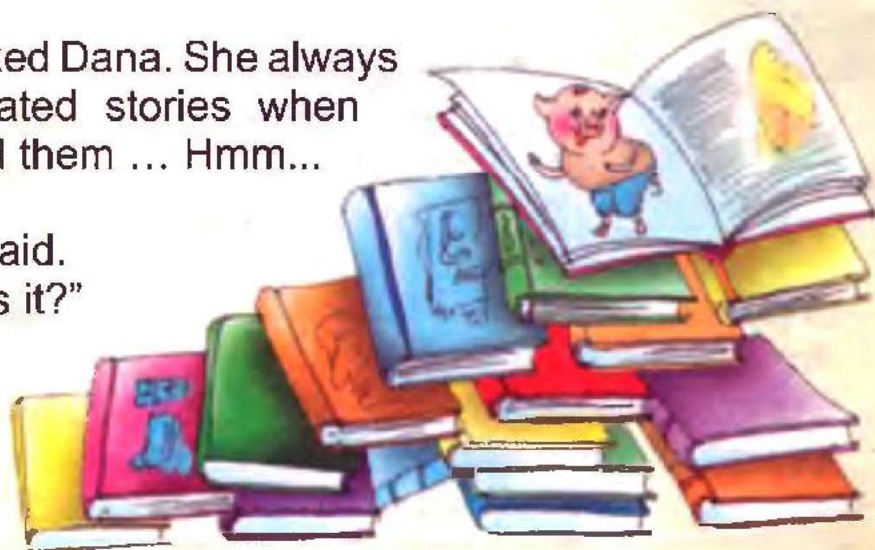
"You don't hate stories, Dana," Mrs. Jewls told her. "You love stories. I would like other children be able to laugh and cry like you."

"Really?" asked Dana. She always thought she hated stories when really she loved them ... Hmm... She was glad.

"Oh ...!" She said.

"Well, what is it?" asked Mrs. Jewls.

"I might love John, too?"



<sup>1</sup>to giggle ['gɪɡl] — гоготати, сміятись

<sup>2</sup>leaky faucet ['fɔ:sɪt] — несправний кран (що протікає)

<sup>3</sup>to break out laughing —  
пирскати зі сміху



**2. Choose the right sentence according to the story.**

1. a) Mrs. Jewls read stories before lunch.  
b) Mrs. Jewls read stories after lunch.
2. a) Dana couldn't stop laughing or crying.  
b) John couldn't stop laughing or crying.
3. a) Dana didn't like stories.  
b) Dana didn't know she loved stories very much.
4. a) Dana didn't really hate John.  
b) Dana hated John.

**3. Look at the pictures and tell the story.**



Every day ...



When the story was ...



When ...



The next day ...



"Really?" ...

**4. Answer the questions.**

- 1) What was Dana's problem?
- 2) What did John mean calling her:  
a) a giggle box?  
b) a leaky faucet?
- 3) Why did she come up to her teacher?
- 4) How did Dana's teacher help her?





## Lesson 8

## 1. Read and compare the two paragraphs.

There **is** some information in the newspaper.

Is **there** any interesting information in it?

There **isn't** any interesting information in the newspaper.

How **much** information **is there** in the newspaper?

There **is a lot of (lots of)** information in the newspaper.

There **is not much** information in the newspaper.

There **are** some magazines on the shelf.

Are **there** any magazines on the shelf?

There **aren't** any interesting magazines on the shelf.

How **many** magazines **are there** on the shelf?

There **are a lot of (lots of)** magazines on the shelf.

## GRAMMAR POINT

**much / many / lots of / a lot of**

Використовуй **many** та **much** в питальних  
та заперечних реченнях.

В розповідних реченнях вживай **lots of** або **a lot of**.

Вживай **many** та **much** після слів **too**, **so** та **as**:

You've got **too many** mistakes in the test.

Drink **as much** as you want.

There are **so many** beautiful flowers here!

## 2. Fill in the sentences with the words from the box.

a) **much, many, are**

1) How ... dictionaries have you got?

2) How ... practice do we need?

3) How ... time did he spend?

4) How ... computers ... there in the library?

5) How ... CDs ... there in the box?

6) How ... work have they got to do?

b) **lots of, much, many, any, is, are**

1) There ... reference books in the library.

2) We have ... time.

3) There ... not ... useful advice in the book.

4) There ... not ... interesting information on the website.

5) There ... buttons on the keyboard.

6) There ... not ... computers in the school!



### 3. Put the questions to the following answers.

- 1) ...? — I have got 3 dollars.
- 2) ...? — No, there is not much help of him.
- 3) ...? — I've got lots of photos.
- 4) ...? — We need lots of time.
- 5) ...? — There are three useful tips in the article.
- 6) ...? — No, they don't store any interesting information on the subject.
- 7) ...? — There are lots of grammar reference books in that book shop.
- 8) ...? — Well, he's got a lot of money.
- 9) ...? — There are two dictionaries in the classroom.

### 4. Read information in the box and write the words below according to the items 1-6.

girl, be, good, an, slowly, write, red, near, tell, beautiful, on, be, the, under, brightly, newspaper, read, listen, a, ask, blue, car

Here are some important grammar words:

#### Grammar word

#### Example

- **noun** [naʊn] —————→ *boy, table*
- **article** ['ɑ:tɪkl] —————→ *a, the*
- **verb** [vɜ:b] —————→ *do, have, go*
- **adjective** ['ædʒɪktɪv] —————→ *nice, bad*
- **adverb** ['ædvɜ:b] —————→ *nicely, badly*
- **preposition** [ˌprepə'zɪʃən] —————→ *on, in, under*

- 1) verbs
- 2) nouns
- 3) adjectives
- 4) adverbs
- 5) prepositions
- 6) articles

### HELPFUL TIPS

#### New Words

When you read or listen to some information in English, there are often words that you don't know. Here is a piece of advice for you:

- 1) Don't worry. You can understand a lot, even if you don't know all the words.
- 2) Try to understand the meaning of new words from the context. Don't stop listening or reading.
- 3) After the lesson use a dictionary to look up the new words. Write them down in your vocabulary notebook.
- 4) Try to learn some new words each week.



## Homework

WB ex.2 - p.12



## Lessons 9-10

### 1. Write down suggestions for the situations.

- Example:** 1) This film is dull. *What about watching a comedy?*  
2) I can't play the piano.  
3) It's father's birthday next week.  
4) Look, the weather is wonderful outside.

### 2. a) Make up the sentences putting the verbs into the correct tense forms. Write down the dialogue.

- A: let / go out / tonight  
B: OK. where / you / want / go  
A: why / we / not / go / Internet Club  
B: it / not open / today  
A: OK. let / play / volleyball  
B: Good idea. what time / you / want / to play  
A: at half past five / what about / go / to the café / now  
B: OK. let / go

### b) Act out the dialogue in pairs.

### 3. Your father wants to learn English. Give him a piece of advice.

### 4. Here is a questionnaire<sup>1</sup>. Work in pairs. Interview each other.

1. Do you try to speak English with your friends?
  - a) usually do
  - b) don't do
  - c) sometimes do
2. What do you do when your teacher uses the word that you don't understand?
  - a) ask the teacher to translate it into Ukrainian
  - b) keep being silent
  - c) ask the teacher to repeat it again
3. What do you try to do outside the school?
  - a) listen to songs in English
  - b) read stories in English
  - c) watch films in English

#### Points:

1. a) = 3  
b) = 0  
c) = 1
2. a) = 1  
b) = 0  
c) = 3

3. 2 points  
for each  
answer

#### Results:

**9-12** You're a great English learner!

**5-8** You're good, but you should improve your English.

**under 5** Do you think, that the teacher can teach you?

*Remember, it is you who has to learn!*

<sup>1</sup>a questionnaire [ˌkwɛstʃəˈneə] — анкета





## 5. Role-play.

### GETTING COMPUTER SKILLS

- A.** *would like to get some skills of a computer user; to be able to use the Internet to make friends around the world.*
- B.** *gives instructions on how to use the computer, how to write and send e-mail letters.*

## PROJECT



## WORK

### CLASS NEWSPAPER

- 1) Read the instructions in the steps below.  
Work in groups of three-four. Discuss your ideas.
- 2) Follow the steps.

#### Step 1

Think about the name for your newspaper.

#### Step 3

Decide who will take each section.

#### Step 4

Find interesting information or a story.

#### Step 5

Collect your classmates' ideas.  
Vote for the best ones. Decide who will write each article.

#### Step 7

Show your story to the others. They will check and correct.

#### Step 10

Display your work.

#### Step 2

Choose the sections for your newspaper.

#### Examples:

School News  
Fact File  
Meet Our Guest  
Time For Fun  
The Gallery of Our Works  
Weather  
The Special Day for ...  
The Advice Bag  
Comic Strip's Section

#### Step 6

Write your story in English.

#### Step 8

Write the article correctly.  
Use a photo or a picture.  
Write a headline.

#### Step 9

Arrange articles and sections on a poster or a large piece of paper.





## Lessons 1-2



## 1. a) Listen and talk. Work in pairs.

Terry: Hello, John.

John: Hi, Terry.

Terry: We've got to hurry.  
It's ten to nine.

John: Don't worry, we'll be  
on time.

Terry: I hope so. Have you  
written French for  
today?

John: No, I haven't. I  
couldn't understand  
those tenses. Have  
you done French for today?

Terry: Yes, I have. But I don't think it is correct. Those tenses  
are really difficult.



## b) Make up your own dialogue.

## 2. Ask and answer.



Have you done  
Maths for today?

Have you  
written English?

Yes, I have.

No, I haven't.



**Use:** Nature Studies, Geography, Maths, Literature, German,  
Art, Ukrainian, History, Computer Studies, Science.



## REMEMBER!

## THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

I / you / we / they **have done** it.

He / she / it **has done** it.

**Have** I / you / we / they **done** it?

Yes, I / you / we / they **have**.

No, I / you / we / they **have not**.

**Has** he / she / it **done** it?

Yes, he / she / it **has**.

No, he / she / it **has not**.

**have not** = **haven't** ['hævnt]

**has not** = **hasn't** ['hæznt]

I / you / we / they

**haven't done** it.

He / she / it **hasn't done** it.





### 3. Listen and act out. Work in a group of three.

**Lilly:** Hello, guys! Have you done your Geography, John?

**John:** I'm afraid I haven't. I had a headache yesterday. Let's hope there's no Geography lesson today. The Geography teacher was ill yesterday.

**Terry:** Lazy bone! You haven't done your homework for today! Have you written French, Lilly?

**Lilly:** Yes, I have. But I forgot to learn Geography. My mum asked me to help her, and I forgot about it at all.

**John:** Don't worry, the geography teacher might not come. Will you help me with French, Lilly?

**Lilly:** Of course, I will.



### 4. Answer the questions.

- 1) Why do John and Terry have to hurry?
- 2) Has John done his homework? Why?
- 3) Has Terry written his French for today?
- 4) Why hasn't Lilly done her Geography?
- 5) Who will help John with French?



### NEW VOCABULARY

**to hurry** ['hʌri]  
**to be afraid (of)**  
**Lazy bone!**

[,leɪzi 'bəʊn]

**I hope so.**

### HELPFUL TIPS

Grammar rules are sometimes difficult.  
You can make grammar rules by yourself:

- 1) Look at the examples.
- 2) Think about the rule.
- 3) Look at the rule to check if it is correct.
- 4) If not, change your rule.



### Remember!

You will learn better if you make grammar rules by yourself.



### REMEMBER!

do — did — **done** [dʌn]

write — wrote — **written** ['rɪtɪn]



### Homework

L1 WB ex.3 - p.16; L2 WB ex.1 - p.16



## Lesson 3

## GRAMMAR POINT

## The Present Perfect Tense

вживають для позначення дії, яка тільки-но (**just**) або вже (**already**) відбулась чи тоді, коли її ще не встигли (**not yet**) зробити.

Часова форма утворюється з допоміжного дієслова **to have** у Present Simple (**have/has**) та 3-ї форми основного дієслова.

I **have just written** the letter.

He **has already done** his homework.

We **haven't visited** our grandparents **yet**.

III форма дієслів утворюється за допомогою додавання закінчення **-ed** до I-ої форми:

I	II	III
visit	visited	visited
play	played	played

III форму неправильних дієслів слід запам'ятати:



## REMEMBER!

I	II	III
come	came	<b>come</b> [kʌm]
go	went	<b>gone</b> [ɡɒn]
make	made	<b>made</b> [meɪd]
read	read	<b>read</b> [red]
see	saw	<b>seen</b> [si:n]
take	took	<b>taken</b> ['teɪkn]

## 1. Write down the Present Perfect forms of the verbs.

**Example:** to act — *have acted*

to appear — ...	to come — ...	to go — ...
to see — ...	to count — ...	to make — ...
to store — ...	to do — ...	to discuss — ...
to write — ...	to correct — ...	to listen — ...
to jump — ...	to take — ...	to read — ...

## 2. Put the sentences into negative forms.

**Example:** He has already come.

*He hasn't come yet.*

- 1) Ann has just watered the flowers.
- 2) Mum has already gone to her work.
- 3) I have already seen this film.
- 4) We have just taken the bus.
- 5) Bob has just entered the shop.
- 6) They have already read this book.
- 7) The children have made a present for their mother.



### 3. a) Read and compare.

I have **never** played tennis before<sup>1</sup>.

(I should learn to play tennis.)

I haven't played tennis today.

(I can play, but I didn't have time to do it today.)

### b) Make up sentences.

I haven't

I have never

I have already

I have just

seen this film

made an article

read this magazine

worked on a computer

gone to the forest

done this work

written in Japanese

yet.

before.

## GRAMMAR POINT

Хоча дія виражена у The Present Perfect Tense відбувалась у минулому, вона має безпосередній зв'язок з теперішнім часом:

I **haven't done** my homework yet.

(And I can't play now.)

He **has** already **written** the letter.

(And he can send it by mail.)

У питальних реченнях ми цікавимося результатом виконання дії на теперішній момент.

**Have** you **done** your English? Yes, I **have**. (No, I **haven't**.)

**Have** you **ever seen** the queen? No, I **haven't**. (Yes, I **have**.)

### 4. Put the sentences into interrogative<sup>2</sup> forms.

1. I have read the book. *Have you read the book?*

2. She has written the exercise. ...

3. Mum has made a cake. ...

4. We have seen a real elephant. ...

5. They have taken all of the chairs. ...

6. Mike and I haven't done Maths for today. ...

7. A happy smile has appeared on his face. ...



## Homework

WB ex.2 - p.18

<sup>1</sup>before [bɪ'fɔː] — до цього часу, перед

<sup>2</sup>interrogative [ˌɪntə'rɒɡətɪv] — питальний



## Lesson 4

## 1. Read and discuss in groups.



## AT THE NEWBURG SCHOOL'S INTERNATIONAL FESTIVAL

Extra-school activities is a part of school life. Parents often go to their children's schools to see their work. Sometimes the schools have exhibitions of the pupils' art or project work. Many schools have a school choir and an orchestra and they hold concerts. Plays at the end of each school year are also very popular. Some of the parents help teachers with these activities.

Today we have been to the Newburg School in Great Britain. The school has had its annual<sup>1</sup> International Festival. Over 300 people have enjoyed food and activities. The pupils have served food from many different countries. Pupils' groups have performed at the festival. We have watched African dancing. We have listened to Japanese storytelling. We have seen a Chinese<sup>2</sup> puppet show and much more. There have been an international fashion show. Pupils have modelled clothes from different countries. Everyone has had a great time at the festival.

Mr. Jones, the school principal said: "All of our pupils and teachers have worked hard over the project. I can say this year's festival is the best we have ever had."



### REMEMBER!

have — had — **had**

be — was/were — **been** [bi:n]



### NEW VOCABULARY

**an activity** [æk'tɪvɪti]

**a choir** [kwaɪə]

**an exhibition** [ˌeksɪ'bɪʃən]

**a fashion** ['fæʃən]

**an orchestra** ['ɔ:kɪstrə]

**a principal** ['prɪnsəpəl]

**to perform** [pə'fɔ:m]

**extra-school** ['ekstrə]

● to hold 

a
an

**concert**  
**performance**  
**exhibition**

● to serve food

<sup>1</sup>annual ['ænjuəl] — щорічний

<sup>2</sup>Chinese [ˌtʃaɪ'nɪz] — китайський



## 2. Say if it is true or false.

- 1) Many schools can have a school choir or an orchestra.
- 2) Parents never help teachers with extra-school activities.
- 3) Parents can see the pupils' art or project work at school.
- 4) The "English Bridge" group has visited the USA.
- 5) The pupils have displayed their hobby collections.
- 6) Pupils have performed African dancing and Chinese puppet show.
- 7) Pupils haven't worked much over the project.
- 8) The school principle has modelled clothes.
- 9) It is the best festival the school has ever had.

## 3. Ask and answer.



Have you ever been to an international festival?

Have you ever seen a Chinese puppet show?

Have you ever had a picnic with your classmates?

Yes, I have.

No, I have never been (seen, had) ...

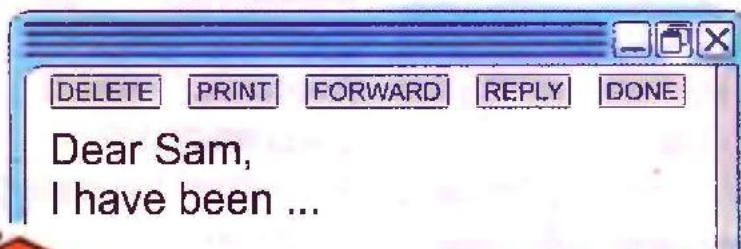


### Use the following:

- fashion show
- pop concert
- Japanese storytelling
- Mexican food
- project work
- puppet show
- hobby collection
- American cartoon
- theatre performance
- history museum



## 4. Write an e-mail letter to your friend about the extra-school activities you have ever had.



# Homework

PB ex.4 - p.33





## Lesson 5

### 1. Read and talk about schools.

Dear "English Bridge",

I am eleven years old. I live in Buenos Aires [ˌbweɪnɒs 'aɪərɪz]. I have finished my study at the primary school already. This year I go to the secondary school which is situated in the centre of the city.

All the pupils study Maths, Science, Spanish and one of the foreign languages here. I have chosen English. Pupils get a lot of homework every day. It is difficult for me: I have never had any homework at my primary school. After the lessons I can have my lunch in the school canteen and do homework in the library.

The school has an excellent orchestra and a choir. There are sports clubs here, too. The school has two tennis courts, a gym inside and a football field outside. I haven't decided what sport club to choose yet.

Anyway, I think, I am lucky to study here. The only thing I don't like about the school is to wear a uniform. What about kids in other schools? Are they allowed to come to school without it?

Bye,  
Carlos.



### NEW VOCABULARY

*an assembly hall*

**canteen** [kæn'ti:n]

**court** [kɔ:t]

**gym** [dʒɪm]

**science** ['saɪəns]

**a science lab**

**excellent** ['eksələnt]

**to allow**

**to decide**

● **to be (not) allowed**

### REMEMBER!

choose — chose — **chosen** ['tʃəʊzən]

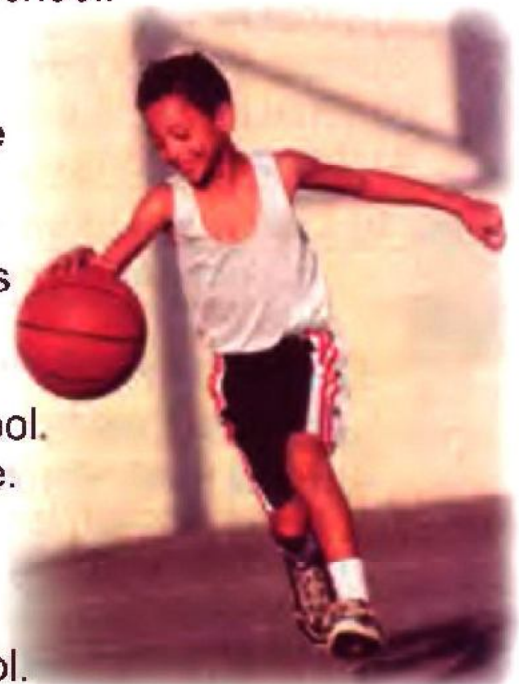




## 2. Say if it is true or false.



- 1) Carlos has finished his study at the secondary school.
- 2) The school is situated in the centre of Buenos Aires.
- 3) All the pupils study Science.



- 4) The pupils can choose subjects at school.
- 5) Carlos has never had homework before.
- 6) There is an excellent orchestra but there is not a choir in school.
- 7) Carlos has decided to choose tennis.
- 8) The boy has to wear a uniform at school.

## 3. Fill in the sentences with the missing words from the box.

activities, the assembly hall, are allowed, excellent, lab, performances, uniform

Yesterday we visited a new school that was opened up in our town. All the pupils wear green ... there. But they ... to come without it after classes. Extra-school ... usually start after classes. Lots of pupils have joined different clubs. The school has got an ... theatre. They held ... in ... . The Science Club is on Tuesdays and Fridays in a ... where pupils have got their Science classes.

## 4. Write a letter telling about your school.

Use the following questions.



- 1) What age have you finished your primary school?
- 2) Do pupils choose subjects at your school?
- 3) Have you had any homework in primary forms?
- 4) Where do pupils eat their lunch in school?
- 5) Is there any tennis court or football field?
- 6) Are you allowed not to wear a uniform?
- 7) Have you joined any club already? Why?





## Lesson 6

### 1. a) Before listening talk about your school. Use the questions:

- 1) What new subjects do you study in the 6th form?
- 2) Have you got new teachers? Who are they?
- 3) What subjects are your favourite?
- 4) What days do you have English lessons?



### b) Listen about one of the favourite school subjects and answer the questions below.

- 1) What way does the English teacher train her pupils?
- 2) What does she teach them at the English lessons?
- 3) What is the most difficult point in learning foreign languages?
- 4) What new steps have the pupils started this year?
- 5) What is the pupil interested in? Why?
- 6) What is she fond of?



### NEW VOCABULARY

**composition** [ˌkɒmpəˈzɪʃən]

**conversation** [ˌkɒnvəˈseɪʃən]

**culture** [ˈkʌltʃə]

**literature** [ˈlɪtərətʃə]

**to support** [səˈpɔ:t]

### 2. Match the school subjects with the phrases you may hear at the lessons.

- |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| 1) Maths            | a) The Earth is the planet in the Solar System. |
| 2) English          | b) Use your computer, please.                   |
| 3) History          | c) Let's play basketball for 10 min.            |
| 4) Geography        | d) We have read about Hetman Mazepa.            |
| 5) P.T.             | e) Do the sum 25 on page 12.                    |
| 6) Nature Studies   | f) Draw this vase, please.                      |
| 7) Science          | g) Role-play the situation using new words.     |
| 8) Computer Studies | h) Sing a song of spring!                       |
| 9) Art              | i) Mix up these chemicals together.             |
| 10) Music           | j) Take the map and tell ...                    |



3. Make a class survey<sup>1</sup> about the favourite subjects.  
Fill in the graph. Tell about the results of your survey.

Subjects	Names of your classmates					Results
	Mary	Serhiy	Oksana	Petro	Olena	
1. Geography		✓				
2. History	✓			✓		

4. a) Read the school rules they have got at Blackpool Secondary School. Speak of the rules you have got in your school.



BLACKPOOL SECONDARY SCHOOL RULES	
1) School starts at 8:30. You must not be late.	
2) You must not walk on the left in the corridors.	
3) You must not eat in the classrooms.	
4) You must go out during breaks.	
5) You must bring a note from your parents if you have been ill.	
6) You must wear the uniform at all times in the school.	

- b) Rewrite the rules above using the phrase "be allowed to".  
Example: Pupils are not allowed to be late for school.



### RULES FOR ENGLISH LESSONS

- Share your ideas and write them down.
- Discuss and choose the best of them.
- Arrange your ideas into the List of Rules. Design it.

### RULES FOR ENGLISH LESSONS

- speak English only
- always do your homework
- consult



## Homework

WB ex.1 - p.21

<sup>1</sup>a survey ['sɜ:veɪ] — опитування, дослідження



1. Listen and read.

# LILLY TEACHES JIMMY

after V. Sculté

Jimmy and Lilly have been friends. Last year they started going to school. The girl was the best pupil in her form, and the boy was the worst in his.

One day Jimmy said to his friend: "I can't go to school any more. I hate English and its spelling." "You're right it's very difficult to write correctly. But try hard and you'll be able to do it," answered Lilly. "I have tried lots of times, but there're no good results," Jimmy said.

"Well, maybe, I'll help you," and Lilly showed him her special copy-book with her own<sup>1</sup> system on how to learn spelling.

"How can you remember when to write **ee** and when **ea**? I can't," Jimmy said.

"Well, shut your eyes, Jimmy, and just imagine that on a sheet of paper you **see** a **green tree** in a street with a **sheep** under it."

"That's wonderful! Now tell me about **ow**. I never know how to spell the word **brown** — with **ow** or **ou**."

"Here you are!" Lilly cried. "Here are some words with **ow**: **Now how** is your **cow**?"

"Great! Can you help me now with **k** and **c**?"

"Oh, it's easy: We read letter **c** as [k] at the beginning of words. For example: **Cats can climb** with their **claws**<sup>2</sup>."

"But when should I spell **k**?"

"Well, shut your eyes and imagine: through a **keyhole** in the **kitchen** you see a **kitten** sitting on a **kerchief**<sup>3</sup> by the **kettle**."

"It's really a great system! Wonderful! You'll be famous all over the world! Thank you! Thank you so much!"



<sup>1</sup>own [əʊn] — власний

<sup>2</sup>claw [klɔ:] — ніготь

<sup>3</sup>kerchief ['kɜ:tʃɪf] — хусточка



## 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) What kind of pupils were Jimmy and Lilly in their forms?
- 2) What was Jimmy's problem?
- 3) How did Lilly help Jimmy?
- 4) Did Jimmy like Lilly's system?
- 5) Is it easy to learn English spelling for you?
- 6) Do you like Lilly's system?

## 3. a) Take a sheet of paper and write out all the rules of spelling which Lilly told Jimmy about.





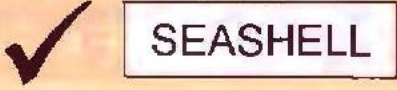
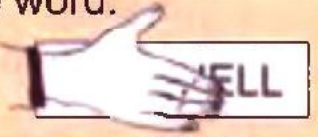
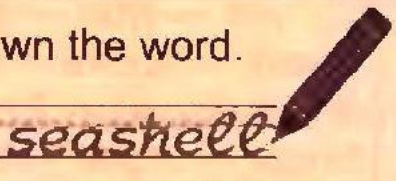

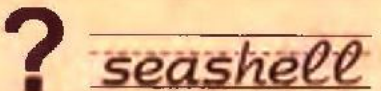
b) Add your own rules to this list.

c) Share your ideas with the class.



## HELPFUL TIPS

### HOW TO STUDY SPELLING WORDS

step 1	Look at the word.  SEASHELL	Say the word aloud.  SEASHELL
step 2	Close your eyes. Imagine what the word looks like. 	Spell it to yourself.  SEASHELL
step 3	Look at the word again.  SEASHELL	Check the word.  SEASHELL
step 4	Cover the word.  SEASHELL	Write down the word.  seashell
step 5	Check the word.  SEASHELL	Is the word spelled correctly?  ? seashell



Homework

WB ex.1 - p.22



## Lesson 8

## 1. Read and put the verbs into the Present Perfect Tense.

Max is interested in photography. He (to take) *has taken* some photos, and he is showing them to his friend. "This is my sister. She (to finish, just) ... cleaning the window." "This is my grandma. She (to cook, just) ... a cake." "This is my sister again. She looks happy. She (to win a prize, just) ... for writing compositions." "This is my cat. He is sleeping, because he (to have, just) ... his dinner." "This is you. You look unhappy because you (to break, just) ... a window with your ball!"

2. Ask your classmate about what he/she has done.  
Use Present Perfect of the verbs from the box.

be, come, see, do, find, make, play, read, write



Have you ever ...?

Yes, I have.  
No, I haven't.  
No, never.



## 3. Write down three things that you have done. Try to find two people in your group who have done one or more things that you have written about.

**Example:** I have been to the museum.

Have you been to the museum, too?

Speak about the results in class.



## REMEMBER!

win — won — **won** [wʌn]  
speak — spoke — **spoken** ['spəʊkən]  
find — found — **found** [faʊnd]  
break — broke — **broken** ['brəʊken]



## NEW VOCABULARY

● to win | a prize  
a competition

## 4. Look at the boy's dreams. Write as in the example.

**Example:**

He is dreaming about winning a prize.

He has never won prizes yet.







He is dreaming about watching "Shrek".



He is dreaming about having a pet.



He is dreaming about making some money.



He is dreaming about playing on the computer.

**5. Here's the postcard from your friend who is on holiday. Your dog has spoilt the postcard. Guess what your friend has written you about. You can use the verbs from the box. Put them into the correct verb form.**

meet,  
take,  
be,  
see,  
visit,  
make

Dear Peter,  
You know, I ... never ... to Japan before  
and now I am happy to be here. I ... to  
Tokyo. I ... some places of interest. I  
... lots of photos. I ... some new  
friends. I ... lots of interesting people.  
That's all for now.  
Yours,  
Paul.

Place  
Stamp  
Here

Mr. Vovchenko  
3/19 Lypova St.  
Zhytomyr  
Ukraine

**6. In the evening you're going to write an e-mail to your friend. Ask him/her some questions. Then tell him what you have done today.**

**Use the following:**

- 1) What lessons / to have / today? What lessons have you had today?
- 2) What games / to play / today?
- 3) Where / to be / today?
- 4) Who / to come / to your home / today?
- 5) Who / to meet / at school / today?
- 6) What TV programmes / to watch / today?
- 7) What else / to do / today?



**Homework**

WB ex.2 - p.23



## Lessons 9-10

### 1. Write your school timetable.

Time	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday

### 2. Answer the questions and then ask your classmate. Work in pairs.

- How many lessons have you got on Monday?
- What lessons have you got on Friday?
- Have you got Maths on Tuesday?
- When have you got Physical Training lessons?
- What is your favourite subject?
- What do you do at the English lessons?

### 3. Write 7 questions to ask an English pupil about school life in England. You may use the words from the box.

subjects, timetable, uniform, number of pupils, school rules, meals at school, extra-school activities, favourite teacher



### 4. Role-play on the following situation.

Imagine your school friend is ill and has missed several days. Some new things has happened at school during (протягом) that time. (For example, you've got a new English teacher.) Phone your friend and have a talk with him.

**A. has been ill. He/she is interested in what is going on at school.**  
**B. is telling school news. He/she answers all of A.'s questions.**



### 5. Write a paragraph about Culture Festival you have had (or planning to have) at your school. Use the following:

to present  
to choose  
to work hard

to make | surprises  
decorations

to give | prizes  
presents

to hold | a show  
exhibition  
game  
concert  
competition

to perform | a play  
a puppet show  
a storytelling  
a gallery of projects  
dancing  
singing



## HELPFUL TIPS

Develop your writing skills. This is a paragraph. The first sentence tells you what the paragraph is about. The other sentences give more information.



### **Example:**

*Alex Morgan, a 12 year-old boy, is a winner of the "Young Poets" competition. His poem is called "My Home". Alex came to Bridge Street School in October. He has been interested in writing for several years. He has written many poems and stories. This is the first time he has won a prize.*

## PROJECT



## WORK

### OUR CONTACTS WITH ENGLISH

#### 1) **Think and discuss:**

- How many contacts have you had with English?
- You have certainly listened to stories and songs in English and seen films in English. But have you ever spoken to any person in English outside your classroom — a tourist, for example? Have you ever visited an English-speaking country or read an English magazine?

#### 2) **Find out:**

- what kinds of contact they have had
- what they did

**a) First decide what kinds of contact you will ask about.**

**You can make a questionnaire like this:**

#### QUESTIONNAIRE

1) a) Have you ever watched an English language TV programme?

Yes

☐

No

☐

b) If Yes, what did you watch?

2. Have you ever ...

**b) Go about the class and ask your questions.**

**3) Report your findings to the class.**



# Unit 3 BIGGER! STRONGER! FASTER!

## Lessons 1-2



### 1. Listen and talk. Work in a group of four.

**Lilly:** We have written many articles. We have taken lots of subjects: health, time, hobbies, learning English ...

**John:** Stop! Wait. We haven't done anything about sports. Sports are interesting.

**Chris:** I think sport is a good idea. There are lots of different kinds of sport.

**Lilly:** That's right. There's athletics, gymnastics, fencing ...

**Terry:** We can invite someone who really does sport and make an interview with him ... I say, John, what's your favourite sport?

**John:** I guess I like tennis.

**Terry:** How about a game some time?

**John:** Sorry, I only watch it ...

**Chris and Lilly:** (laughing)  
Ha-ha-ha!..



### 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) What subjects have they taken for their articles?
- 2) What subjects haven't they taken?
- 3) What did John suggest?
- 4) What did Terry want to do?
- 5) What's John's favourite sport?  
Can he play it?

### 3. Make up your own dialogue.

**Work in pairs. Use the New Vocabulary.**



### REMEMBER!

+	?	+
<b>some</b> something someone (somebody)	<b>any</b> anything anyone (anybody)	<b>every</b> everything everyone (everybody)
<b>- no</b> nothing none (nobody)	Is there <b>anybody</b> in the bath? - No, there is <b>nobody</b> there. + <b>Everyone</b> is here. + Well, listen. <b>Somebody</b> is in the hall.	



### NEW VOCABULARY

**a race** [reɪs]

**an event** [ɪ'vent]

**athletics**

[əθ'letɪks]

**climbing** ['klaɪmɪŋ]

**fencing** ['fensɪŋ]

**gymnastics**

[dʒɪm'næstɪks]

**horse riding**

['hɔ:s,raɪdɪŋ]

**karate** [kə'rɑ:tɪ]

**sailing** ['seɪlɪŋ]

**skateboarding**

['skeɪtbɔ:dɪŋ]





#### 4. Listen and act out. Work in pairs.

**Terry:** Here is Tom Bondarenko, our school sports expert. Tom, can you explain<sup>1</sup> the difference between 'a game' and 'a sport'?

**Tom:** Football and tennis are games. We play games.

**Terry:** But running and jumping are not games. What are they?

**Tom:** They are sports or athletic events. When we use the word 'a game' we think of some kind of sports in which there are two sides or teams.

**Terry:** I see.

**Tom:** The high jumps and the long jumps are called field events. Running races are called track events.

**Terry:** What is a 'track'?

**Tom:** The track is the ground that has been made for running on.

**Terry:** Thank you very much for the explanation<sup>2</sup>.

**Tom:** Not at all.

#### 5. Ask and answer.



What are athletic events?

What is the difference between 'a game' and 'a sport'?

What are field (track) events?

What is your favourite sport?



#### 6. Copy the network below and classify these sports:

sailing, hockey, skating, long jump, horse races, gymnastics, tennis, skiing, football, swimming, fencing, skateboarding, karate, high jump, running, volleyball, climbing



## Homework

WB ex.1 - p.27

<sup>1</sup>to explain [ɪk'spleɪn] — пояснювати

<sup>2</sup>an explanation [ˌeksplə'neɪʃən] — пояснення



## Lesson 3

1. a) *Make up nouns from the following verbs.*

**Example:** play - player; run - runner.

swim, skate, ski, box, jump, train, win

b) *Give '-ing' endings to the following verbs to make up names of sports.*

**Example:** run - running.

jump, ski, swim, skate, box



## REMEMBER!

Use the verbs:

**GO** — if you speak about sports ending in **-ing**;  
You **go** swimming.

**PLAY** — if you speak about ball games and chess;  
You **play** football. We **play** chess.

**DO** — if you speak about other sports;  
You **do** athletics.

2. *Complete the sentences. Use the correct verb 'play', 'go' or 'do'.*

1. My sister ... fencing every weekend.
2. My friends ... basketball on Thursdays.
3. I ... swimming with my friends on Sundays.
4. The boys ... volleyball in summer.
5. Mary ... aerobics twice a week.
6. John ... karate at the school club.

3. a) *Fill in the sentences with 'anything' or 'anyone'.*

- 1) Is there ... who plays football here?
- 2) Does ... go to the Sport Club?
- 3) Is there ... to play with?
- 4) Have you ... to say?
- 5) Has ... seen the game?
- 6) I don't know ... about that match.

b) *Fill in the sentences with 'something' or 'someone'.*

- 1) There is ... in the gym.
- 2) ... has happened, I think.
- 3) She is speaking with ... on the phone.
- 4) There is ... interesting in the box.



- 5) ... help us, please!
- 6) I know he is going to do ... .

**c) Fill in the sentences with 'nothing', 'nobody', 'everything' or 'everybody'.**

- 1) ... is all right, ... has happened.
- 2) Don't worry, ... will be here to see it.
- 3) I can't hear a sound. Yes, there is ... in the room.
- 4) Look, there is ... in the box. It is empty.
- 5) She has spoken to ... . All know about this.
- 6) She said ... and went away.



**REMEMBER!**

There is **nobody** in the room.  
There is **not anybody** in the room.

**5. Rewrite the negatives as in the example.**



**Example:** She doesn't want anything. *She wants nothing.*

- 1) Peter didn't do anything.
- 2) They don't know anything about the story that has happened.
- 3) We don't play anything at P.T. lessons.
- 4) Mike doesn't know anybody in this team.
- 5) I've got nothing to say.
- 6) There is nobody at home.

**6. Complete the dialogues. Use the words from the boxes.**

- a) something, anything, nothing, everything

*Mother:* Would you like ... to eat?

*Daughter:* No, thanks. I don't want ... at the moment, thank you.

*Mother:* But you've had ... to eat all day. Is ... all right? Are you feeling ill?

*Daughter:* No. Don't worry. ... is fine. I'm just not hungry. That's all.

- b) somebody, anybody, nobody, everybody

*Woman:* Hello. Can I speak to ... in the office, please?

*Man:* I'm sorry. It's after 6 p.m. There isn't ... in the office now. ... has gone home.

*Woman:* But I must speak to ... today.

*Man:* I'm sorry. There is ... here. Can you phone back in the morning? There will be ... here then.



**Homework**

WB ex.2 - p.29



## Lesson 4

## 1. Read and discuss in groups.

**JOIN THE TEAM!**

The boys of our School Volleyball Team are happy today. They have just won their 8th match. "They're a great team," said their teacher. "Since last December they have lost only 3 games." They have played together for two years.

The School Football Team is not so lucky. Its players haven't won any competition for the last year. They need new players now.

**VOLLEYBALL**

This game can be played inside or outside. It is for two teams of six players. You need a ball and a high net. You hit the ball with your hand or arm. You can't catch or hold the ball. The winner is the first team to get 15 points.

**FOOTBALL**

You know that football is an outdoor game for two teams of eleven players. But do you know that the goalkeeper is the only person who can touch the ball with his hands, hold it and throw it? The other players can only kick or roll the ball. The winner is the team with most goals at the end of the game.

**MAKE YOUR  
CHOICE AND JOIN  
THE TEAM YOU LIKE.  
SUPPORT  
YOUR SCHOOL!**

**REMEMBER!**

catch — caught — **caught** [kɔ:t]  
hold — held — **held** [held]  
hit — hit — **hit** [hit]  
loose — lost — **lost** [lɒst]  
throw — threw — **thrown** [θrəʊn]




## 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Why are the boys of the volleyball team happy?
- 2) How many games have they lost?
- 3) How many matches have they won?
- 4) How many years have they played together?
- 5) Has football team won any competition for the last year?

## 3. Complete the sentences according to the texts above.

- 1) Football is ... game.
- 2) There are ... in a football team.
- 3) The football player can only ...
- 4) The goalkeeper can ...
- 5) In football the winner is the ...
- 6) Volleyball can be played ...
- 7) There are ... in a volleyball team.
- 8) You should ... play volleyball.
- 9) In volleyball you can't ...
- 10) The volleyball winner is ...



**NEW VOCABULARY**

**a goal** [gəʊl]  
**a goalkeeper** ['gəʊl,ki:pə]  
**a match** [mætʃ]  
**a net** [net]  
**to kick** [kɪk]  
**to roll** [rɒl]  
 ● **to win a game**  
 ● **to lose a match**

## 4. Fill in the sentences with the words from the box.

joined the team, lost a match, beat teams, competition, team

Four girls from West Hill School have won this year's table tennis ... . On Saturday they ... from five other schools in the town. The girls have played together for 9 months. Pat ... in July and since then the girls have not ... . Their teacher, Miss Holly, said, "We've never had a better ... ."



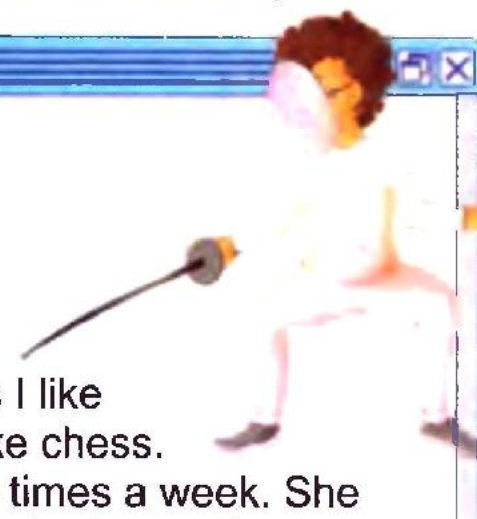
## 5. Write a paragraph about your school sport team.





## Lesson 5

1. Read the e-mail letters and write an e-mail to "English Bridge" group about your sports activities or your favourite sport.



DELETE PRINT FORWARD REPLY DONE

**From:** Mike Sitton  
**To:** English Bridge  
**Subject:** Favourite Sport

Hi!

I do water sports. Of all outdoor games I like volleyball best. Of all indoor games I like chess. My sister goes to the school gym three times a week. She couldn't go to the gym yesterday as she had many lessons. My friend Nick has his training every day. He is good at fencing. But I don't like to watch fencing competitions. I am crazy about watching football matches. I never miss a match played by my favourite team.



### NEW VOCABULARY

**a champion** ['tʃæmpjən]  
**Wimbledon** ['wimbəldən]  
 ● **to beat a record**

DELETE PRINT FORWARD REPLY DONE

**From:** Rosa Ischenko  
**To:** English Bridge  
**Subject:** Favourite Sport

Hello!

My favourite sport is tennis. I became interested in this game last summer. First I loved playing tennis with my cousin. But she always beat me. Then I heard about tennis school at the sports centre. I have trained for a year there. I have beaten my cousin already. My favourite tennis player is Steffi Graff. I have never been to Wimbledon yet. But I've got a dream to be there. I think I shall learn better from the top players. I hope that I'll be the champion in future.




### REMEMBER!

beat — beat — **beaten** ['bi:tən]



## 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Who does water sports?
- 2) Who goes to the school gym three times a week?
- 3) Who is going to be a champion at Wimbledon?
- 4) Who is good at fencing?
- 5) Who is crazy about watching football matches?

## 3. Ask and answer. Work in pairs.

What sports do you like?



What sports do you do?

Which days do you do these sports?

What games do you like?



Which sports do you watch on TV?

What sports are you good at?

## 4. List your favourite sport things.

My favourite sport programme on TV is ...  
 My favourite sport is ...  
 My favourite sports star is ...  
 My favourite team is ...

## 5. Write about your favourite sport. Use the following:



First ... Then ...

My favourite sport is ...  
 I became interested in ...  
 My favourite champion is ...  
 I hope ... in future.  
 I'd like to ...  
 I think ...





## Lesson 6

### 1. a) Before listening talk on the following items.

- 1) Do you know anything about the Olympic Games?
- 2) How often are they held?
- 3) What sports do sportsmen compete in?



### b) Listen, choose and answer.

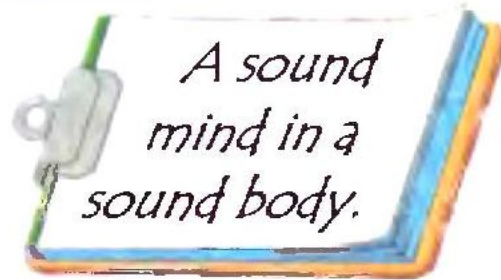


- 1) Where were the first Olympics?  
a) in Rome  
b) in Greece  
c) in Egypt
- 2) How many events were there?  
a) one b) three c) two
- 3) What was the prize for the winner at the first games?  
a) a plum b) an orange c) an apple
- 4) How often are the Olympics held?  
a) every five years b) every three years  
c) every four years
- 5) How many prizes are there for each event?  
a) one b) three c) two
- 6) Are there Winter Sports at the Olympic Games?  
a) Yes, there are. b) No, there are not.  
c) Every two years.
- 7) How many rings does the Olympic flag have?  
a) four b) six c) five
- 8) The Olympic flag shows the colours of ...  
a) Greek flag b) flags of all countries c) nature





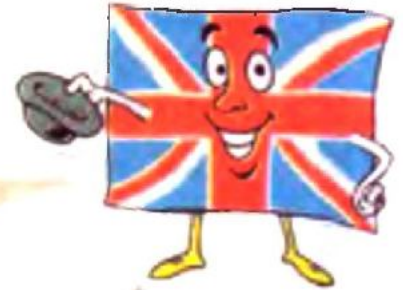
## 2. Learn the proverb and comment on it.



## 3. Read the article and answer the questions.

The British are a sporting nation. Most British towns and cities have football teams. Cup Final at Wembley<sup>1</sup> Stadium in London is one of the biggest sporting events of the year. Some fans pay up to £200 (pounds) for a ticket to the match.

Cricket and golf are the other typically British games.



- Why do we call the British a sporting nation?
- What is the biggest sporting event of the year in Britain?



## 4. Listen and learn the poem.

### DOING SPORTS

I like riding by bicycle,  
I'm fond of playing chess.  
My friend is good at judo —  
We are keen on sport as you can guess.

And every kind of sport for sure  
As it can even illness cure  
And can for every girl and boy  
Bring many moments of joy.

The proverb reads for everybody:  
"A sound mind in a sound body".



## Homework

WB ex.2 - p.31

<sup>1</sup>Cup Final at Wembley ['wembli] — фінальний кубок в Уемблі



## 1. Listen and read.



# THE TORTOISE<sup>1</sup> AND THE HARE

(an Aesop<sup>2</sup> fable)

In a forest near a river there lived a hare who was very proud<sup>3</sup> of himself. Most of all he liked to talk about the way he could run. Of course, the other hares did not like him and did not want to listen to him.

"I must not boast<sup>4</sup>," he thought, "then my friends will talk to me again."

But he forgot all about his decision when he saw a tortoise. He looked at her short legs and cried, "Oh, I am so glad that I am not a tortoise!" The tortoise called out to him, "If you can run so fast, let's have a race."

The hare began to laugh, "Have a race with you? I can get to the finish and back before you cross the starting line."

The tortoise said, "Do you see that big tree over there? The finish will be at that tree."

The tortoise was very clever, and she wanted to teach the hare a lesson.

The hare ran off as fast as he could, and the tortoise started slowly after him. The hare ran very fast and soon he was not far from the tree. He thought, "I shall wait for the tortoise here and when she comes near, I shall run to the finish and be the first."

But the day was very hot, and he soon fell asleep. Some time later he woke. He looked around and saw that the tortoise was nearly at the finish. The other hares were watching her and laughing. The proud hare got up and ran as fast as he could, but the tortoise had already reached the

tree. The other hares laughed and said to each other, "He boasted very much, but he couldn't win a race against a tortoise, who is one of the slowest animals in the forest."



<sup>1</sup>a tortoise ['tɔ:təs] — черепаха

<sup>2</sup>Aesop ['i:sɒp] — Езоп, стародавній грец. байкар

<sup>3</sup>to be proud [praʊd] — пишатися

<sup>4</sup>to boast [bəʊst] — вихвалитись



**2. Read and say if it is true or false according to the fable.**

- 1) The hare told he was a great runner.
- 2) All the other hares liked to listen to him.
- 3) "I must boast," the hare thought.
- 4) The hare was glad that he was not a tortoise.
- 5) The hare wanted to have a race with the tortoise.
- 6) The hare won the race.
- 7) The tortoise taught the hare a good lesson.

**3. Look at the pictures and tell the story.**

There  
lived ...



Once  
he saw  
a tortoise ...

The day  
was hot  
and ...



The hare  
ran as fast  
as he could  
but ...

**4. Read and answer.**

A fable is a kind of story. The characters of fables are animals or people. The animals often act like people. A fable shows a problem and teaches a lesson. When you read a fable, you learn the lesson, too. Most of the lessons in fables are about how people should or shouldn't act. "The Tortoise and the Hare" is one of the fables.

**What lesson does the fable above teach you?**

**5. Do you know other fables? Think about one and make some notes. What lesson does it teach? Discuss it in class.**



**Homework** WB ex.2 - p.33



## GRAMMAR POINT

### The Present Perfect Tense

вживається у реченні із прийменниками **for** (протягом) та **since** (з часу) для позначення дії, яка, почавшись у минулому, продовжує тривати у момент мовлення (у теперішньому часі) або щойно закінчилась.

We **have studied** English **for** four years.

(We are still studying.)

I **have lived** in Kharkiv **since** 1999.

(I still live there.)



## REMEMBER!

for ten minutes

for five years

for a month

for a long time

for the winter holidays

since 12 p.m.

since 2003

since last Monday

since last month

since yesterday

### 1. Choose the correct sentence 'a' or 'b'.

- 1) a) I'm living in Ukraine since 1998.  
b) I've lived in Ukraine since 1998.
- 2) a) He has been here for two hours.  
b) He is being here for two hours.
- 3) a) I was here since 7 a.m.  
b) I've been here since 7 a.m.
- 4) a) She has had a cat for 3 years.  
b) She has a cat for 3 years.

### 2. Fill in the sentences with 'since' or 'for'.

- 1) I've been in the volleyball team ... May.
- 2) I haven't seen Mike ... two days.
- 3) We haven't played basketball ... November.
- 4) She has had a dog ... three years.
- 5) My sister has been ill ... last Monday.
- 6) They haven't watched TV ... two months.

### 3. Read and do the task below.

A: Max, you've just won the karate competition. Congratulations!

M: Thank you.

A: How long have you done karate?



M: For about two years.

A: How many times have you won competitions?

M: I have never won competitions before.

This is the first competition I have taken a winning prize.

A: Good luck!



**Write if it is true or false.**

- 1) Alex is good at karate.
- 2) He has just won a prize.
- 3) He has done karate for a long time.
- 4) He has won competitions for many times.



## REMEMBER!

bring — brought — **brought** [brɔ:t]

buy — bought — **bought** [bɔ:t]

drink — drank — **drunk** [drʌŋk]

eat — ate — **eaten** ['i:tn]

teach — taught — **taught** [tɔ:t]

know — knew — **known** [nəʊn]

send — sent — **sent** [sent]

speak — spoke — **spoken** ['spəʊkən]

swim — swam — **swum** [swʌm]

### 4. Answer the questions.

- 1) Where do you live? How long have you lived there?
- 2) Where do you go to school? How long have you been there?
- 3) Who is your teacher? How long has he/she taught you?
- 4) Who are your friends?  
How long have you known them?

### 5. Ask and answer. Use the words from the Word Bank.



How long have you  
been interested in ... ?

How long have you  
gone / done / played ... ?

I have ... since/for ...



Word Bank

dancing  
photography  
painting  
collecting  
stamps  
swimming  
boxing  
judo  
gymnastics  
tennis



# Homework

WB ex.2 - p.34



### 1. a) Complete the table.

everything	...	everywhere
something	...	...
...	anybody	anywhere
...	nobody	nowhere

### b) Complete the sentences with the words from the table above.

- 1) I'm bored. I've got ... to do.
- 2) I've got ... in my eye.
- 3) Has ... phoned me today?
- 4) I had a dream last night, but I can't remember ... .

### 2. Complete the dialogue with Present Perfect and 'ever' or 'never'.

A: What sports (do) **have you done**?

B: I (played) ... football and tennis at school, but I (never play) ... for the school teams.

A: What about fencing? (ever try) ... that?

B: Yes, I (do) ... fencing 3 or 4 times. I (never enjoy) ... it.

A: What about winter sports? (ever try) ... skiing?

B: Yes, I (try) ... skiing I love it! I (never do) ... snowboarding, but I (always want) ... to do it.

### 3. a) Answer the questions quickly.

- 1) Are you a good swimmer?
- 2) Can you swim underwater?
- 3) Does walking make you tired?
- 4) Are you a sports fan?
- 5) What is your favourite team?
- 6) What is the task of the goalkeeper?
- 7) Are footballers allowed to kick the ball with his head?
- 8) Are footballers allowed to touch the ball with his hands?
- 9) How many footballers are there in a team?
- 10) Do you read sports columns in the newspaper?
- 11) What is the best football field in Kyiv?
- 12) Do you know the names of any famous footballers?
- 13) What sports do you do in winter?
- 14) How long does a football game last?
- 15) How often do you go to a stadium or a sports ground?

**BLITZ  
INTERVIEW**

### b) Interview your classmate.



#### 4. Play a guessing game.

Think of a sport, but don't tell anyone. Ask and answer questions with a partner. Your partner has to guess the sport.

Do you need any special clothes?

Do you play it in winter?

Can you kick the ball?



Do you play it inside?

Do you play it with a ball?

Is it a volleyball?

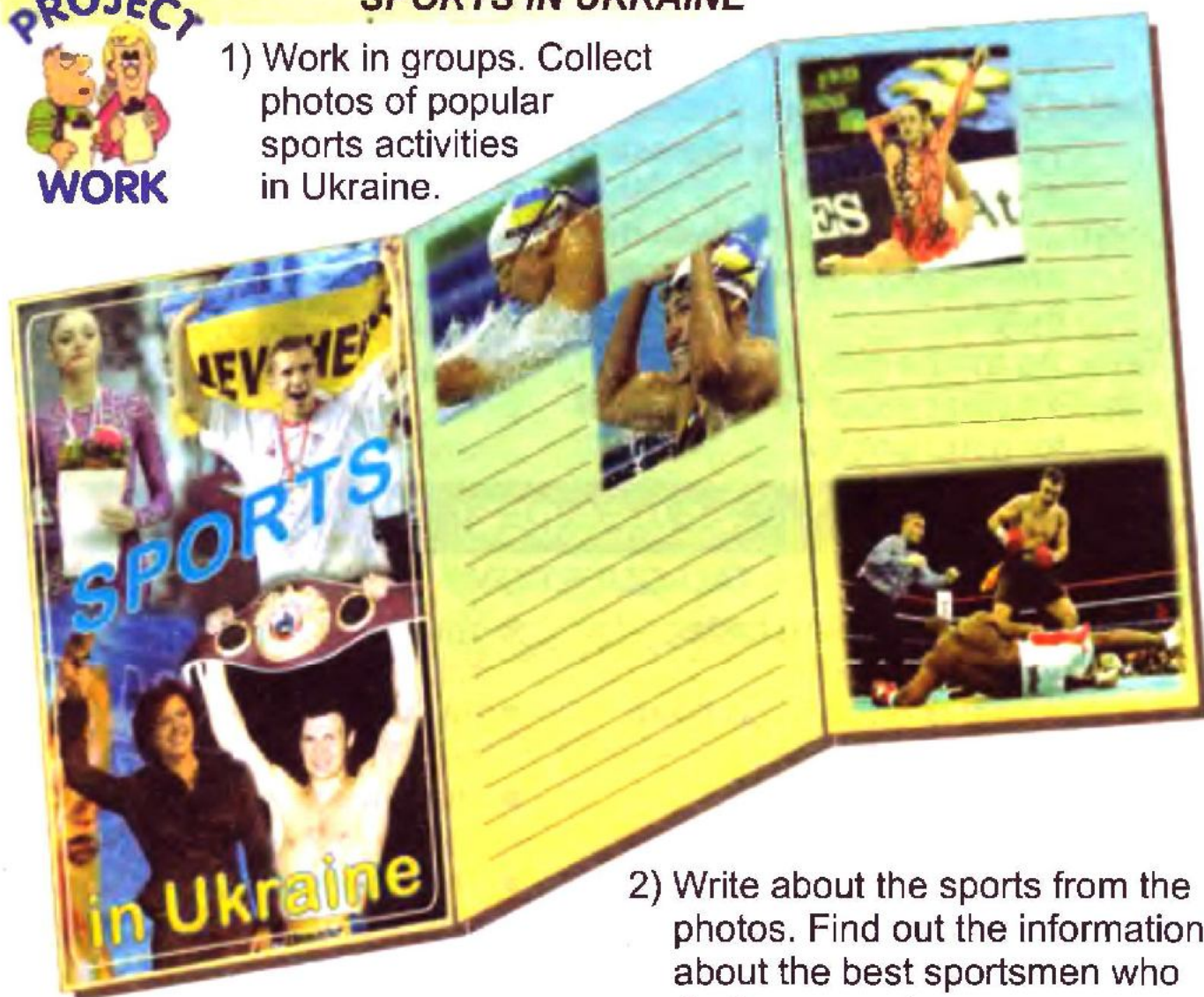
#### 5. Find out the information about the last Olympic Games. Where and when were they held? How many medals did Ukraine win? In which sports? Write about it.

#### PROJECT



#### SPORTS IN UKRAINE

- 1) Work in groups. Collect photos of popular sports activities in Ukraine.



- 2) Write about the sports from the photos. Find out the information about the best sportsmen who do these sports.

3) Use the photos and the writing to design a brochure.

4) Display your brochure "Sports in Ukraine" in class.



## Lessons 1-2



## 1. Listen and act out. Work in a group of three.

Terry: It's getting frosty, isn't it?

John: Yes, it is. I think winter's on the way.

Terry: It usually gets dark soon after school in December, doesn't it?

Lilly: Yes, it does. But I am really looking forward to playing with snow, skating, skiing ...

John: We are going to have a New Year Party at school, aren't we?

Terry: Of course, we are. I hope this year it will be more interesting and funnier. And ...

John: ... And girls will boast with their new fancy dresses, won't they?

Terry: As for the girls, they will.

Lilly: So, what about it? It is normal for girls, isn't it?



## NEW VOCABULARY

**a calendar** ['kæləndə]

**a celebration** [ˌseləˈbreɪʃən]

**a degree** [dɪɡˈriː]

**temperature** ['temprɪtʃə]

**changeable** ['tʃeɪndʒəbəl]

**to celebrate** ['selɪbreɪt]

**above** | **below** | **zero**

- to look forward to
- to be on the way
- What about it?
- I can't believe it!



## REMEMBER!

## TAG-QUESTIONS

- You are feeling better, **aren't you?**
- She is going to go there, **isn't she?**
- John looks fine, **doesn't he?**
- He has lived here for 3 years, **hasn't he?**
- They came yesterday, **didn't they?**
- You will visit me tomorrow, **won't you?**
- You aren't feeling good, **are you?**
- He isn't going to fly, **is he?**
- Mary doesn't like fish, **does she?**
- They haven't bought a new house yet, **have they?**
- She didn't come yesterday, **did she?**
- We shan't do this, **shall we?**





## 2. Listen and talk.

**Chris:** The weather is very changeable all the year round, isn't it?

**Terry:** Yes, it is. But I don't think they have many changes in Africa, for example.

**John:** Well, let's see ... Listen, guys! It is 20 degrees above zero in Cairo<sup>1</sup> now!

**Terry:** I can't believe it! The temperature is 3 degrees below zero today in Kyiv.

**Chris:** They don't have any snow in Cairo, do they?

**John:** Sure, they don't.

**Chris:** Well, do they have the New Year celebrations?

**Lilly:** We need some information to answer your question.

**Terry:** Why don't we make an article about the calendar and holidays?..



## 3. Combine the words. Make up 8 sentences with some of them.

snowy  
dry  
warm  
hot  
wet  
cold  
changeable  
good  
bad

weather

cloudy  
cool  
sunny  
rainy  
bright  
frosty  
foggy  
windy

day

hot  
cold  
dry  
rainy

season

## 4. Ask and answer.



It is cloudy today, isn't it?

What is the weather like today?

What is the temperature (today)?



## 5. Make up your own dialogue about the weather. Work in pairs.



# Homework

WB ex.1 - p.37

<sup>1</sup>Cairo ['kaɪərəʊ] — Каір (столиця Єгипту)



## Lesson 3

## GRAMMAR POINT

## Question Tags

— це міні-запитання, які вживаються в кінці речення.

Їх використовують для того, щоб надати більшої ввічливості, приязні до співрозмовника.

- Запитання в заперечній формі вживайте тоді, коли основне речення — стверджувальне:

You **speak** English well, **don't you?**

You're **laughing** at me, **aren't you?**

- Запитання в стверджувальній формі вживайте тоді, коли основне речення — заперечне:

I **don't have** to wear this dress, **do I?**

I **am not going to** do it, **am I?**

### 1. Choose the correct question tag.

- 1) Mary doesn't like her fancy dress, ...  
a) *didn't she?* b) *does she?* c) *did she?*
- 2) It was a windy day yesterday, ...  
a) *wasn't it?* b) *isn't it?* c) *was it?*
- 3) You aren't English, ...  
a) *are you?* b) *aren't you?* c) *were you?*
- 4) I am very good at playing chess, ...  
a) *am I?* b) *wasn't I?* c) *am I not?*
- 5) We've got nice masks, ...  
a) *have we?* b) *haven't they?* c) *haven't we?*
- 6) They haven't done their homework yet, ...  
a) *has they?* b) *have they?* c) *haven't they?*

### 2. Complete the sentences. Use the right question tag.

1. There isn't any cloud in the sky, ... ?
2. It is going to be sunny tomorrow, ... ?
3. He didn't watch the film yesterday ... ?
4. It wasn't very snowy last winter, ... ?
5. You don't like rainy weather, ... ?
6. This spring has brought many rainy days, ... ?

### 3. Make up questions. Then ask and answer as in the example.

#### Example:

- 1) Lots of parents (to help) you with the festival, haven't they?  
— Lots of parents have helped you with the festival, haven't they?  
— Yes, they have.



- 2) Some mums (*to make*) these wonderful costumes, didn't they?  
3) The costume of spring (*to be*) very beautiful, isn't it?  
4) I am (*not; to be going to*) wear a false nose, am I?  
5) I (*to look*) funny, won't I?  
6) You (*to laugh*) at me, aren't you?  
7) OK, the play (*to be going to*) be great, isn't it?

**4. Make the dialogue more polite. Act it out in pairs.**

- It's a beautiful day today.  
— Right. But it is a little bit windy. I don't like windy weather.  
— But you look well today.  
— It is my new sweater that makes me look well.  
— The sweater is beautiful. But I think it is not the right weather for wearing a sweater.  
— Yes, but it is not hot today.

**5. a) Look at the picture. Guess who these people are and what they are doing.**



**b) Ask questions to get as much information as you can. Do it in a polite and friendly way.**

**Example:** — The man on the sofa is a father, isn't he?  
— I think, he is.





## Lesson 4

## 1. Read and discuss in groups.

# What Are Holidays?

Many holidays are days when you don't have to go to school and grown-ups don't have to go to work. These are often fun-filled days when your family gets together for a big dinner or a picnic. Sometimes there are *parades* or *fireworks*.

On some holidays people go to church. The very word 'holiday' means a 'holy' day<sup>1</sup> — a day, on which people thank and honour<sup>2</sup> God. We celebrate all kinds of holidays. Many, such as Christmas, Easter and others are religious<sup>3</sup> holidays. Some holidays are the birthdays of famous people, like Taras Shevchenko in Ukraine or George Washington<sup>4</sup> in the USA. Others, such as Independence Day, are the birthdays of the countries. And there are a number of special days, like Thanksgiving<sup>5</sup> in the USA and Canada. There are also holidays for special groups of people: Mother's Day or Father's Day. And there is your very own holiday — your birthday.

What way do people celebrate these holidays? *It depends* on the date itself and the country, its *national traditions* and *customs*.



<sup>1</sup>holy ['həʊli] — святий

<sup>2</sup>to honour ['ɒnə] — вшановувати

<sup>3</sup>religious [rɪ'lɪdʒəs] — релігійний

<sup>4</sup>George Washington [dʒɔːdʒ'wɒʃɪŋtən] — Джордж Вашингтон (1-й амер. президент)

<sup>5</sup>Thanksgiving [ˌθæŋks'gɪvɪŋ] — День подяки



## 2. Complete the sentences according to the text above.

- 1) Holidays are often ...
- 2) On some holidays people go ...
- 3) Christmas and Easter are ...
- 4) Some holidays are the birthdays ...
- 5) Independence Day is ...
- 6) There are also holidays for special groups of people like ...
- 7) Your birthday is ...
- 8) The way people celebrate the holiday ...

## 3. Match the holidays with their dates.

- |                        |       |                               |
|------------------------|-------|-------------------------------|
| 1) New Year            | ----- | a) April                      |
| 2) Christmas Day       | ----- | b) January 1                  |
| 3) St. Valentine's Day |       | c) February 14                |
| 4) Easter              |       | d) October 30                 |
| 5) Victory Day         |       | e) January 7 (or December 25) |
| 6) Independence Day    |       | g) August 24                  |
| 7) Halloween Day       |       | h) December 19                |
| 8) St. Nicholas' Day   |       | b) May 9                      |

## 4. Ask and answer.



When is ... ?  
What kind of holiday is it?  
What way do people celebrate it?



### NEW VOCABULARY

a **custom** ['kʌstəm]

a **firework** ['faɪəwɜ:k]

a **parade** [pə'reɪd]

a **tradition** [trə'dɪʃən]

● **in honour** ['ɒnə] **of**

● **to depend on (upon)**

## 5. Answer the questions.

- 1) What are holidays for?
- 2) How do they change our life?
- 3) What holidays do we have?
- 4) What English holidays do you know?
- 5) Whom do people give presents?



### REMEMBER!

**On:** on Christmas Day; on Mother's Day;  
on Father's Day; on holiday;  
on Halloween; on Christmas Eve;  
on my birthday

**At:** at Christmas; at weekend; at Easter



**Homework**

WB ex.2 - p.39



## Lesson 5

**1. Read the letters and speak about your favourite holiday or a custom.**

Hi, "English Bridge".

My name is Betsy. I am from Canada. My favourite holiday is Thanksgiving Day.

We celebrate it on the fourth Thursday of November.

Thanksgiving is really a harvest<sup>1</sup> festival.

But the history of this holiday comes back to 1621 when the Pilgrims, the first settlers<sup>2</sup> of America, after the difficult winter had a good harvest the following year. The Indians helped them. In Massachusetts [ˌmæsəˈtʃuːsɪts] the Pilgrims invited their Indian friends to join their festival. Since that time Americans and Canadians thank God and each other for the good on this day. I think it's a special holiday for our people.



My name's Tanya. I live in Ukraine. We celebrate many holidays in our country.



I should say I like all of them.

Celebrating is my joy. I love greeting guests at my home. I like cooking something tasty. Guests come to share the joy of the day. Sometimes we make presents or surprises for each other.

It's great!

<sup>1</sup>harvest [ˈhɑːvɪst] — урожай

<sup>2</sup>settler [ˈsetlə] — поселенець



## 2. Think and answer the questions.

- 1) What is Thanksgiving? Do you like the idea of the holiday? Would you like to introduce the holiday of Thanksgiving in Ukraine? If so, what would it honour?
- 2) What is Tanya's favourite holiday? What is the best point of celebrating for her? In what way do you prepare your house for your guests?

## 3. Read and match the greeting with the card.



a) Happy Easter!  
b) Many Happy returns of the day!  
c) Happy Mother's Day!  
d) Christmas greetings and best wishes for the New Year.  
e) Will you be my Valentine? Happy Valentine Day!

## 4. Say how you celebrate some of the holidays.

*You may use the following phrases:*

**Mother's Day:** to make the day special; to please; to help; to give flowers (presents, greeting cards); to send greeting cards to granny, sister or aunt.

**Easter:** to print Easter eggs; to go to church; to have family dinner; to bake an Easter cake.

**Christmas:** a Christmas tree (decorations); Santa Claus; to have a party; to invite guests; to roast a goose; to make the New Year's wishes; to make a fancy dress (party mask); to sing (dance).





## Lesson 6

### 1. a) Before listening answer the questions.

- What is the 1st day of the year?
- Do all of the countries start the year on that date?
- Have you heard about the Chinese calendar?



### b) Listen and tell about the history of the 1st day of the year.



### 2. Match and speak about the beginning of the year.

- |                         |                                       |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1) Ancient Greeks       | a) Easter                             |
| 2) Ancient Romans       | b) between January 21 and February 19 |
| 3) A French king        | c) December 21 or 22                  |
| 4) Jewish New Year      | d) March 1                            |
| 5) Iranian "New Day"    | e) between September 5 and October 5  |
| 6) The Chinese New Year | d) March 21                           |

### 3. Read and answer the questions on the right.

Midsummer's Day in June is the longest day of the year. On that day a very old custom at Stonehenge<sup>1</sup> in England takes place. Stonehenge is one of the Europe's biggest stone circles that is 10 or 12 metres high. They are 5 000 years old. What was Stonehenge? A holy place? A market? They say it was a kind of a calendar. The sun and the stones let the ancient people know when the months and seasons start. Visiting Stonehenge on the morning of June 24th, when the sun shines on one famous stone — the Heel<sup>2</sup> Stone, is an ancient but still a living custom.

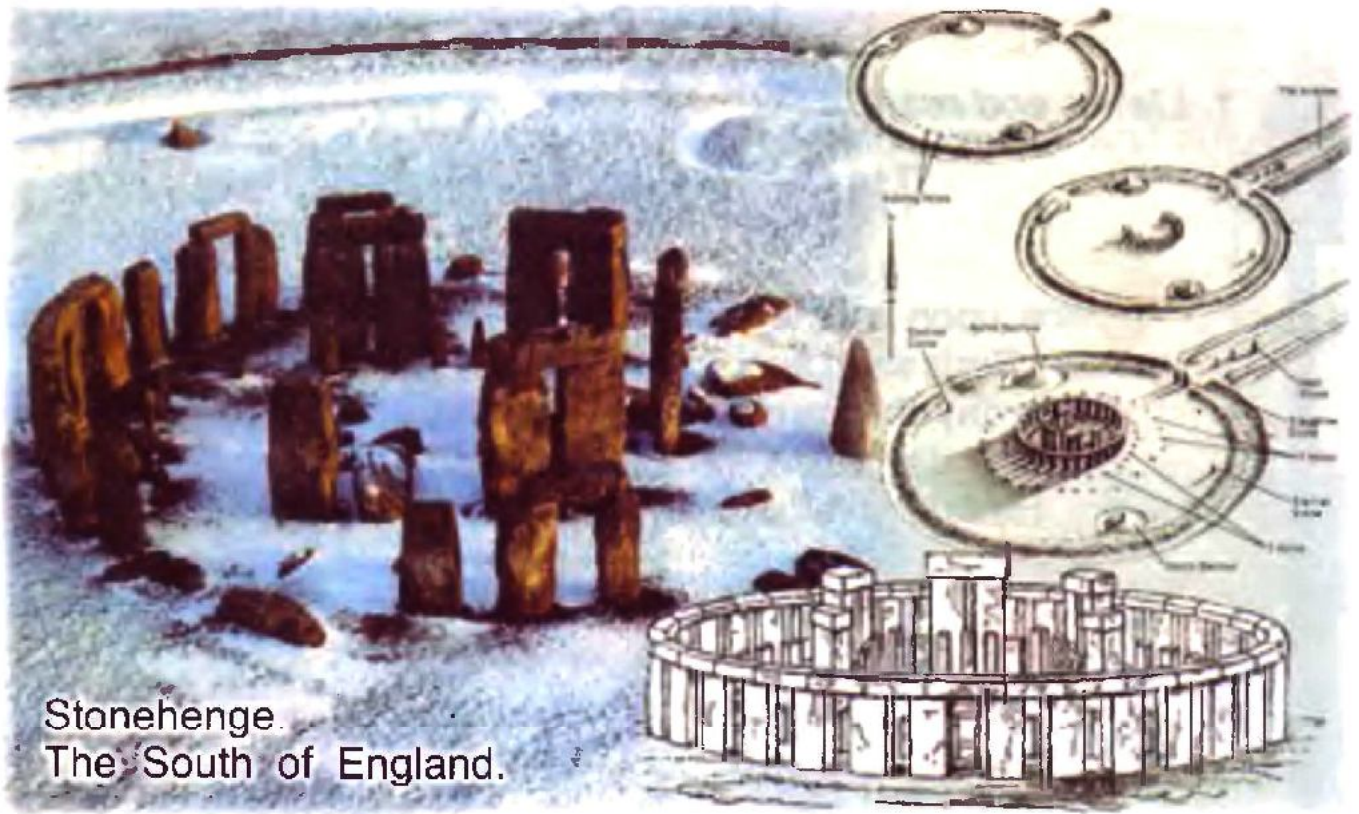


- What is an old custom that is still living at Stonehenge?
- What was the Stonehenge?

<sup>1</sup>Stonehenge [ˌstəʊnˈhendʒ] — Стоунхендж (стародавня кам'яна обсерваторія)

<sup>2</sup>Heel [hi:l] — назва найбільшого каменю у Стоунхенджі (від слова 'heel' — підбор)





Stonehenge.  
The South of England.



**4. Sing the song.**

# JINGLE BELLS

*by James Pierpont*

Dashing through the snow  
On a one-horse open sleigh,  
Over the fields we go,  
Laughing all the way;  
Bells on bob-tail ring,  
Making spirits bright,  
What fun it is to ride and sing  
A sleighing song tonight, Oh!..

**Refrain:**

Jingle bells, jingle bells,  
Jingle all the way!  
O what fun it is to ride  
In a one-horse open sleigh

*twice*



A day or two ago,  
The story I must tell  
I went out on the snow  
And on my back I fell;

A gent was riding by  
In a one-horse open sleigh,  
He laughed as there I sprawling lie,  
But quickly drove away, Oh!..

**Refrain.**



## Homework

WB ex.1 - p.41



1. Listen and read.

# THE SELFISH GIANT

*after O. Wilde*

Once upon a time there lived a Giant. He had a beautiful garden. Birds sang songs there.

Every day children came to his garden and were happy there.

But one day when the Giant saw the children he got very angry. He built a large wall around and told the children not to come.

Then spring came. There were a lot of flowers and birds in all gardens. But it was winter in the selfish Giant's garden.

The Giant thought that the spring was late.

Then summer came to all gardens. But there was snow in the Giant's garden. There were not green trees, or flowers.

Autumn gave fruit to every garden. But only a cold wind and white snow flakes danced in the trees of the Giant's garden.

One morning the Giant heard beautiful music in his garden. It was the song of a little bird. He went into the garden. All those trees were white. But there was a green tree in one corner of his garden. There was a little bird singing in the tree. The Giant saw a little boy under it. He could not get up on the tree. Now the Giant understood why spring did not want to come.



The Giant put the boy up in the tree. The big tree became green. The birds flew to that tree. The boy was happy. The Giant was happy, too. He said to the children: "Now it is your garden."



## 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) What did the children do in the garden?
- 2) What was the Giant's garden like in spring, summer and autumn?
- 3) Why didn't spring come to the garden?
- 4) What did he see one morning?
- 5) What did the Giant do and say?
- 6) What do you think about the Giant?

## 3. Look at the pictures and tell the story.



Once upon a time ...



One day he became angry ...



But it was winter ...



The Giant put ...





## Lesson 8

**1. Complete each sentence with a question tag.**

- 1) The Old New Year's Eve is on January 13, ... ?
- 2) The girls are going to wear their fancy dresses, ... ?
- 3) Chinese people don't celebrate Christmas, ... ?
- 4) In Britain they don't give flowers to a man, ... ?
- 5) She has never seen so many presents, ... ?
- 6) They will make fireworks and parades in the streets, ... ?

**2. Choose the right ending.**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) You wanted that, ... ?<br/> a) <i>would you</i><br/> b) <i>didn't you</i><br/> c) <i>wouldn't you</i><br/> d) <i>do you</i></li> <li>2) You can't do this, ... ?<br/> a) <i>can't you</i><br/> b) <i>would you</i><br/> c) <i>mustn't you</i><br/> d) <i>can you</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3) He saw the parade, ... ?<br/> a) <i>is he</i><br/> b) <i>won't he</i><br/> c) <i>didn't he</i><br/> d) <i>doesn't he</i></li> <li>4) He hasn't forgotten about the decorations, ... ?<br/> a) <i>doesn't he</i><br/> b) <i>is he</i><br/> c) <i>has he</i><br/> d) <i>hasn't he</i></li> </ol> |
|---|--|

**3. Complete the tag-questions. Choose the correct answers.**

- 1) They have made the list of presents, ... ?  
a) *They never make such things.*  
b) *Well, they haven't. They are not happy.*  
c) *Yes, they have. They did it the day before yesterday.*
- 2) The Chinese all over the world celebrate the New Year, ... ?  
a) *Well, they do. But they celebrate it at the end of January.*  
b) *I don't think they do.*  
c) *Yes. I think they live in their own world.*
- 3) The calendar doesn't depend on the country's traditions or customs, ... ?  
a) *Sure, it does.*  
b) *Not very much. But the calendar shows the celebrations of this or that country.*  
c) *Yes, it does.*

**4. Complete the sentences.**

- 1) He ... going to do it, is he?
- 2) You ... know the answer, do you?
- 3) The team ... the game, didn't they?



- 4) Kate ... act as a Princess, can't she?
- 5) My friend ... do such things, could he/she?
- 6) We ... wear our new costumes, won't we?
- 7) Mary ... always in time, wasn't she?
- 8) They ... come so early, would they?
- 9) I ... take this bus, should I?
- 10) Bob ... missed his train, has he?
- 11) His parents ... lived in the town for 3 years, haven't they?
- 12) It ... often rain in winter, does it?
- 13) It ... snowing now, isn't it?
- 14) She ... not learn much at that school, will she?
- 15) I ... run quickly, can I?
- 16) You ... have a lot of fun at the party, won't you?



## BRUSH UP!

wet	wetter	the wettest
changeable	more changeable	the most changeable
Якщо прикметник (adjective) двоскладовий із закінченням на <b>-y, -er, -ow</b> , використовуємо 1-ий варіант:		
happy	happier	the happiest
clever	cleverer	the cleverest
narrow	narrower	the narrowest
Але: good	better	the best
bad	worse	the worst

### 5. Put the adjectives into the correct forms.

a) **Example:** It is sunny today. It was *sunnier* yesterday.

- 1) It is cold. It was ... an hour ago.
- 2) What a bright day! It is ... than yesterday.
- 3) Look, the sky is cloudy. I am afraid it will be ... in 5 minutes.
- 4) The weather was bad yesterday, but today it is even ....
- 5) Last winter was snowy enough, but this winter is ....

b) **Example:** October is very foggy. I think it is the *foggiest* month of the year.

- 1) Spring is (*warm*) ... season in this country.
- 2) Wow! It is so windy today! I think it is ... day of this month.
- 3) This is (*good*) ... New Year party the school has ever had.
- 4) Last summer was (*hot*) ... for the last 5 years.
- 5) Today is (*wet*) ... day of this autumn.



## Homework

WB ex.1 - p.43



## Lessons 9-10

### 1. Read about the weather in the newspaper.

Ask and answer about the weather in other cities.



What is the weather like in Ankara?

It's raining.



What's the temperature there?

It's warm. It's 20 degrees above zero.



#### TODAY'S WEATHER AROUND THE WORLD

Ankara	r	warm	20°
Lisbon	s	hot	27°
Oslo	c	cold	5°
Liverpool	w	cool	14°



### 2. Say if it is true or false.

- 1) The 1st day of the New Year is January 1 for all countries.
- 2) New Year's Day is more important holiday than Christmas in Britain.
- 3) Stonehenge was a kind of a calendar.
- 4) They celebrate Thanksgiving day both in the US and Canada.
- 5) Independence day is a religious holiday.
- 6) Every country has its own traditions for New Year celebration.
- 7) Midsummer day is on June 22.

### 3. Fill in the text with the missing words from the box.

decorate, celebrates, Chinese, traditions,  
fireworks, January, look forward, good luck

Every country has its own ... for New Year Day. Scotland ... it with its traditional music. At New Year people look back and ... to a good future. The Chinese New Year comes between 17 ... and 19 February. There are ... and parades in the streets. Some people dress up as traditional ... dragons and dance in the streets, while others ... their homes. The Chinese people believe that decorations bring ... for the New Year.





**4. Make a Christmas postcard or a Valentine card.**

*Be My Valentine!*



**PROJECT**



**WORK**

**UKRAINIAN HOLIDAYS AND CELEBRATIONS**

**a) Interview your classmates, friends or relatives. Add questions you like.**

- What is your favourite holiday?
- What new celebrations would you like to establish<sup>1</sup>?
- What is the greatest holiday in Ukraine?
- In honour of what person would you like to establish a holiday?
- What is more important to you (on holiday): a day off or a celebration?
- Can religious holidays become national ones?
- Do you celebrate any holidays?
- What traditions do you know?
- How do you celebrate your favourite holidays?
- What holidays can unite<sup>2</sup> people in Ukraine?

**b) Analyse<sup>3</sup> the results of the interview and give a report to the class.**

I interviewed ... people.  
Most (many, some, ...) people think that the greatest holiday is ... .  
Most (many, some, ...) people celebrate ... .  
... % of interviewees stand for establishing ... .  
... were not mentioned as favourites.

<sup>1</sup>to establish [ɪ'stæblɪʃ] — започатковувати

<sup>2</sup>to unite [ju:'naɪt] — об'єднувати

<sup>3</sup>analyse ['ænləaɪz] — аналізувати



## Lessons 1-2



## 1. Listen and talk. Work in groups of three.



Chris: Hello, Lilly. Hello, Terry ...

Lilly: Oh, Chris, you are too late again.

Chris: I know, I am sorry ... There is always too much work to do at home.

Terry: You've been late for several times these days. I think it's a problem, isn't it?

Chris: Yes, it is. It is because of my father. He has sold his car and hasn't bought a new one yet.

Lilly: Well, what about going by bus?

Chris: Those buses are not fast enough.

Terry: I think you have to plan your time well enough.

Lilly: We've already prepared for the interview. John and his uncle are going to be here in some minutes.



## 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Does Chris always come in time?
- 2) What is the problem?
- 3) Does Chris like to go by bus? Why?
- 4) What have Terry and Lilly done already?
- 5) Who is going to come?



## REMEMBER!

**too/enough**

He is big **enough**.

She is **too** small.

She is not big **enough**.

There **are too** many people here.

There **aren't enough** people there.



## 3. Listen and act out. Work in pairs.

Terry: You travel a lot, don't you?

Alex (John's uncle): Oh yes, I love travelling. I spend too much time visiting different parts of the world, sometimes on business and sometimes for pleasure.





Terry: Have you ever travelled by plane?

Alex: Yes, I have. I always go by plane on my business trips. When I travel for pleasure, I usually go by ship. It's interesting to get to know the other passengers, enjoy being at sea ...

Terry: What about going by train?

Alex: I have made some of my journeys by train. But they are not pleasant enough. Especially<sup>1</sup> in a holiday season. There are too many people inside the carriage. There is too little fresh air on the train.



## NEW VOCABULARY

a carriage ['kærɪdʒ]

a journey ['dʒɜːni]

a passenger ['pæsɪndʒə]

● to go

by

plane

train

bus

car

ship

on foot

● to travel

on

business ['bɪznɪs]

for

pleasure ['pleʒə]

■ to get to know

### 4. Say if it is true or false.

- 1) Alex loves travelling.
- 2) He has never travelled by plane.
- 3) He has travelled only for his pleasure.
- 4) He is interested in getting to know the other passengers.
- 5) He is afraid of being at sea.
- 6) He has made some journeys by train.
- 7) Journeys by train are pleasant enough.
- 8) There are too many people inside in a holiday season.

### 5. Ask and answer. Use the phrases below.

Have you ever travelled by ... ?

Yes, I have.

No, I haven't.

Was it a pleasant journey?

Yes, it was. I enjoyed ...

No, it wasn't. There were too many ... (not enough ...).



## Homework

WB ex.2 - p.46

<sup>1</sup>especially ['ɪspeʃəli] — особливо



## Lesson 3

## GRAMMAR POINT

## The Adverb (Прислівник)

- Прислівники виражають ознаку дії, стану або якості, наприклад час, місце та обставину дії, ступінь стану або якості.

She studies **well**.

Where did you go **yesterday**?

Let's go **upstairs**.

He has **never** seen it before.

- Прислівники способу дії, як правило, утворюються за допомогою додавання закінчення **-ly** до прикметника.

quick      **quickly**

happy      **happily**

**Але слід  
запам'ятати:**

good	<b>well</b>
fast	<b>fast</b>
hard	<b>hard</b>
late	<b>late</b>
early	<b>early</b>

1. **Make up adverbs from the following adjectives and complete the sentences with them.**

slow, heavy, merry, fast, loud, bright

- I had to speak very ...
- The cat climbed the tree very ...
- The sun is shining ... today.
- The birds sing ... in spring.
- Some animals are very fast but some move very ...
- The children were laughing ...

2. **Rewrite the sentences as in the example.**

**Example:**

She is a good singer.

Yes, *she sings well*.

- He is a careless driver.
- She is a slow walker.
- Jane is a hard worker.
- John is a fast speaker.
- Mr. Brown is a good teacher.
- I am a bad painter.
- Mary is an "early bird".



## REMEMBER!

**too + adjective/adverb (надто)**

She is **too** young to travel alone.  
(She can't travel alone.)

He drives **too** fast.  
(He should not drive so fast.)

**Adjective/adverb + enough (достатньо)**

This camera is good **enough**.  
(And I like it.)

She got up early **enough**.  
(She will come to school in time.)



### 3. Complete each sentence with 'too' or 'enough' and one of the adjectives from the box.

late, heavy, cheap, fat, short, light, good

- 1) I can't wear this skirt. It's ... .
- 2) Tom can't buy this camera. It isn't ... .
- 3) Winnie-the-Pooh couldn't get through the hole. He was ... .
- 4) Let's buy these jeans. They are ... .
- 5) I can't carry this suitcase. It is ... .
- 6) Where is Mike? It is ... .
- 7) Switch on the lamp. It is not ... .

### 4. Choose the correct word.

- 1) There are (**too much** / **many**) hotels in the town.
- 2) There are (**too much** / **many**) people on the plane.
- 3) They haven't got (**many** / **enough**) water in the bath tub.
- 4) There aren't (**much** / **enough**) hotels at the seaside.
- 5) I've got (**too much** / **many**) work to do.
- 6) There wasn't (**many** / **enough**) rain last month.
- 7) There is (**too much** / **many**) salt in the soup.



### REMEMBER!

<b>enough</b> <b>too much</b> <b>too many</b>	+ Noun
---	--------

There *is* **too much** water.  
 There *are* **too many** cars.  
 There *isn't* **enough** sugar.  
 There *aren't* **enough** books.

### 5. Complete the sentences.

a) Use 'too' or 'enough' and the adjectives from the box.

sweet, small, long, warm

- 1) Could I have some water, please? The tea is ... .
- 2) Jane, you should get a hair cut. It's ... .
- 3) You needn't your coat today. It is ... .
- 4) The coffee isn't ... ? Can I have some sugar, please?

b) Use 'too much' or 'too many'.

- 1) I can't watch the film. I've got ... homework.
- 2) I can't find the pen! There are ... books on the desk.
- 3) I didn't enjoy the holidays. There were ... people there.
- 4) Don't make ... noise. I've got a headache.



## Homework

WB ex.2 - p.47



## Lesson 4

**1. Read the text and explain why people travel on their holidays.****WHAT IS TRAVELLING?**

Are you fond of travelling? If yes, you can see and learn lots of things. The best way to study geography is to travel. The best way to get to know and understand people is to meet them in their own homes.

When people are on holiday or, as Americans say, on vacations, they like a change. They travel to see other countries and continents, cities and towns. It is always interesting to discover new things. If you are on holiday, you should arrange everything before you go on a trip.

There are travel agencies where you can get help with your means of transport and planning your vacation. You can travel by train, by plane, by ship or by car. When you use any kind of transport you are called a passenger.

It's for sure that all ways of travelling have their advantages and disadvantages. And people choose the way they like.

Don't forget a camera to take photos of sights of a city or views of mountains, lakes, forests, or famous people, or ancient buildings or even animals and birds. You will be pleased enough to watch the photos of the happy moments of your life.

**2. Discuss the following items.**

- 1) Do you agree that the best way to study geography is to travel?
- 2) Why do people travel when they are on their vacations?
- 3) Who can help with transport and planning your vacation?
- 4) What means of transport can you travel by?
- 5) What do people think about when they choose the way of travelling?
- 6) What should you do before you go on a trip?
- 7) What photos can you take while travelling?
- 8) Why do people take photos?



3. a) Look through the picture and read the story.

LITTLE RED RIDING HOOD'S TRIP

At first little Red Riding Hood went on foot, then she took a



bus to the Railway Station. She went by train to the Airport and flew by plane over the mountains. She took a taxi to the harbour<sup>1</sup> and sailed by ship across the sea. Then she rode her bicycle to her Granny.



NEW VOCABULARY

*an advantage*

[əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ]

*an airport* ['eəpɔ:t]

*a disadvantage*

[,dɪsəd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ]

*a railway station*

['reɪlweɪ,steɪʃən]

*a vacation* [və'keɪʃən]

*a view* [vju:]

*to arrange* [ə'reɪndʒ]

*to discover* [dɪs'kʌvə]

● *to go on a trip*

b) Work in pairs. One of you is a Little Red Riding Hood. The other is an interviewer. Have a talk about the Hood's trip.



How did you get to ... ?



I went there by ...

4. Read and make up the sentences as in the example.

**Example:** to study geography / to travel

*The best way to study geography is to travel.*

to get to know and understand people / to meet in their own homes

to learn a language / to live in the country / it is spoken in

to get to know the country / to learn the language of it

5. Write a paragraph about travelling. Here is a plan for you.



1) Learning different interesting things.

2) Some important points for travellers.

3) A camera is necessary<sup>2</sup>.



Homework

PB ex.5 - p.81

<sup>1</sup>harbour ['hɑ:bə] — гавань

<sup>2</sup>necessary ['nesɪsəri] — необхідний



## Lesson 5

## 1. Read the letter and share your experience in travelling.

Hello, everyone!

Last week I travelled by plane for the first time in my life. I travelled with my parents.

We went to the airport by taxi. When we arrived there, we put our suitcases on a cart and went into the airport.

The airport was very busy. There were too many people. Some of them were at the check-in desk. Others were at the information desk. When we got on the plane, an air hostess said 'hello' to us and pointed to our seats. There were lots of people on the plane, too.



It was fantastic when the plane started going up into the air. I looked through the window. Everything below us was very small — the streets, the cars, the buildings and the people. And I felt very excited!

Julia.

## 2. Choose the right word according to the letter above to complete each sentence.

- 1) Julia went to the airport ...  
a) by bus   b) by taxi
- 2) They put their suitcases ...  
a) on a cart   b) on a trolley
- 3) The airport was very ...  
a) quiet   b) busy
- 4) Some of the people stood at the ...  
a) souvenir shop   b) check-in desk
- 5) When they got on the plane ... said 'hello' to them.  
a) a pilot   b) an air hostess



## NEW VOCABULARY

**an air hostess**

[eə'həʊstɪs]

**a cart** [kɑ:t]

**a check-in desk**

**a suitcase** ['su:t,keɪs]

**comfortable**

['kʌmfətəbəl]

**to arrive** [ə'raɪv]

**to point** [pɔɪnt]

● **to book a ticket**

● **to feel excited**

[ɪk'saɪtɪd]



- 6) It was fantastic when the plane started going ...  
 a) down onto the ground b) up into the air  
 7) Julia felt very ...  
 a) excited b) unhappy

### 3. Answer the questions.

- |                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1) Have you ever travelled?        | 4) Did you travel by train,          |
| 2) When did you have your journey? | by ship or by plane?                 |
| 3) Where did you go?               | 5) What did you see on your journey? |
|                                    | 6) Why do people travel?             |

### 4. a) Read and fill in the letter with missing words from the box.

arrived, fantastic, voyage, took, journey, caught, travelling, pictures, comfortable, passengers

Hello, Ann!

I've been on a wonderful ... I travelled to Odesa and then had a ... by ship. I travelled with my mum and dad. It was a very nice journey. I had a ... seat next to the window. We ... to Odesa at midnight. We were tired and we missed the last bus. So we ... a taxi and went to a hotel. In the morning we ... a bus to the port. Our ship left at 10 a.m. Odesa is a big city and port. I think there is nothing better than ... by ship. I liked the sea and the wind, I liked the friendly faces of the ... , and the food, and the music. The weather was ... I took some ... of different places. See you soon.

Best wishes,  
 Mary.

b) Imagine you are Mary. Tell the class about your journey to Odesa and your voyage by sea.

### 5. Write a few sentences about your last journey (voyage).

6. Write a letter to a friend who is going to visit you. Explain how to get to your house from the railway station. Use and remember the following phrases:



to get	into	a car
	out of	a taxi

to get	on	a train
	off	a horse

to catch/miss	a train
	a plane
	a bus

to take	a taxi
	a tram
	a plane
	a bus



## Homework

PB ex.5 - p.83



## Lesson 6

### 1. Find out the meanings of the words in a dictionary.

a dragon ['dræɡən]

a shape [ʃeɪp]

to move [mu:v]

Norway ['nɔ:weɪ]

Greenland ['ɡri:nlənd]

Iceland ['aɪslənd]

skillful ['skɪlfəl]

Sweden ['swi:dn]

Denmark ['denmɑ:k]

Viking ['vaɪkɪŋ]

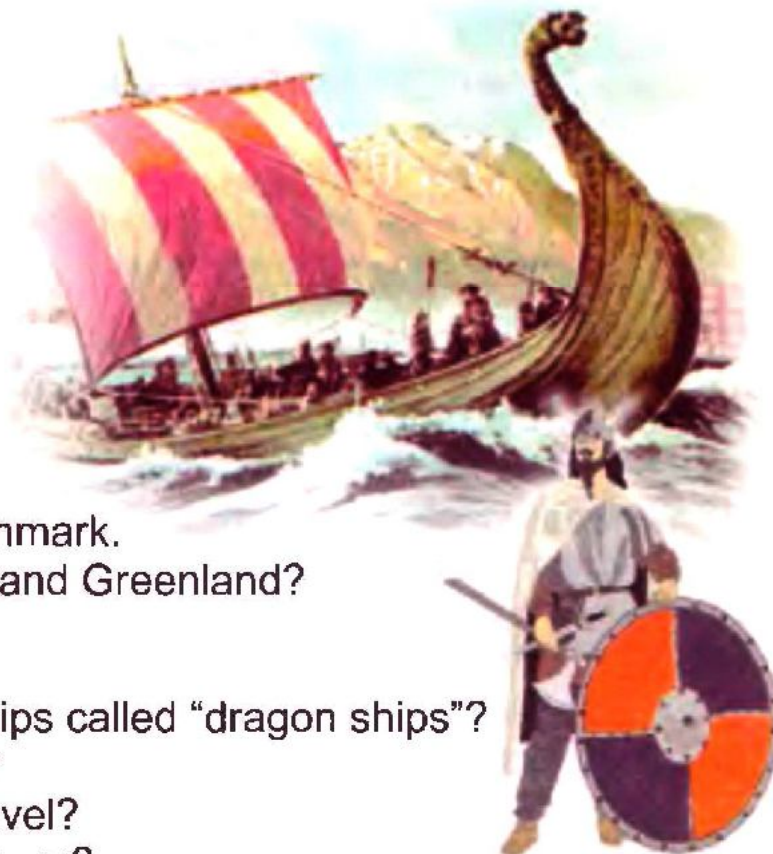
Atlantic Ocean [ət'læntɪk 'əʊʃən]



### 2. Listen and say if it is true or false.



- 1) The Vikings were the sailors.
- 2) The Vikings' ships had dragon's heads inside.
- 3) The ship could carry only 15 men.
- 4) The Vikings came from Norway, Sweden and Denmark.
- 5) They discovered Iceland and Greenland?



### 3. Answer the questions.

- 1) Why were the Vikings' ships called "dragon ships"?
- 2) How did the ships move?
- 3) Where did the Vikings travel?
- 4) What lands did they discover?

### 4. Read the article and do the task after it.

In the past people travelled round the world by sea. Since the Magellan's time, people have travelled round the world on foot and



by all forms of transport. Some have ridden bicycles, horses or motorcycles. Others have travelled by train, by car



and by ships or by plane. In the 16th century<sup>2</sup> Magellan's men took three years to travel round the world. In 1961 Yuriy Gagarin travelled around the Earth by spaceship in 89 minutes.

<sup>1</sup>century ['sentʃəri] — століття



**Prove that it hasn't been easy to be on the move in the past and the travellers of that time were brave people. Use:**

not	comfortable	enough	too	dangerous
	safe			tiring
	enjoyable			troublesome

**5. There are different thoughts about travelling. Some people say travelling has got only advantages. Others don't think so positively. Ground up the ideas. Use the word map.**



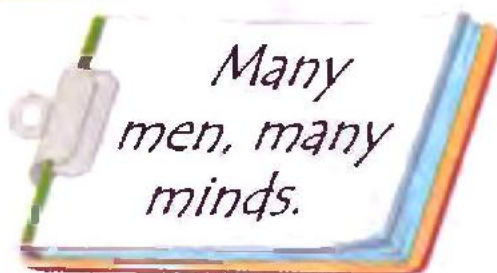
I like to travel ...

.....

But sometimes travelling is ...

.....

**6. Learn the proverb and comment on it.**



## NEW VOCABULARY

- a sailor** ['seɪlə]
- dangerous** ['deɪndʒərəs]
- enjoyable** [ɪn'dʒɔɪəbəl]
- safe** [seɪf]
- tiring** ['taɪərɪŋ]
- troublesome** ['trʌbəl səm]



**7. Listen and learn the poem.**

## TRAINS AND FERRYBOATS<sup>1</sup>

Over the mountains,  
Over the plains<sup>2</sup>,  
Over the rivers  
Here come trains



Carrying passengers,  
Carrying mail,  
Over the country  
Here come trains.



Over the river,  
Over the bays<sup>3</sup>  
Ferryboats travel  
Every day.

Watching the seagulls<sup>4</sup>,  
Laughing with friends  
I'm always sorry,  
When the trip ends.



## Homework

WB ex.2 - p.50

<sup>1</sup>ferryboat ['ferɪboʊt] — паром

<sup>2</sup>a plain [pleɪn] — рівнина

<sup>3</sup>a bay [beɪ] — бухта, затока

<sup>4</sup>a seagull ['si:ɡʌl] — чайка



1. Listen and read.

# PLANNING A TRIP

The Smiths have decided to visit their aunt Emily, who lives in Liverpool, during their summer holidays. Now they are discussing how they can get there.

"I think we can go there by train," says Mr. Smith. "When we go by train we'll have speed<sup>1</sup> and comfort. We can see a lot of things from a train window, can't we?"

In summer Alice doesn't like to travel by train. It is hot on a train.

"For me," — she says, "there is nothing like travelling by plane. It's the fastest way of travelling. We can have an enjoyable time in comfortable armchairs. We can read or sleep during the journey."

"But planes don't fly in bad weather," says Mike. "And, besides, it is very expensive to travel by plane. Let's go to Liverpool by ship."

But Mrs. Smith doesn't like the idea. "We'll go to Liverpool by car. It'll be a cheap and comfortable journey."



2. Say if it is true or false.

- The Smiths have decided to visit their uncle.
- Aunt Emily lives in Liverpool.
- When we go by train we'll get speed and comfort.
- It is hot on a train in summer.
- The quickest way of travelling is by plane.
- Planes fly in any weather.
- They'll go to Liverpool by train.

<sup>1</sup>speed [spi:d] — швидкість



### 3. Answer the questions.

- 1) Where does aunt Emily live?
- 2) Does Alice like to travel by train?
- 3) What is the quickest way of travelling?
- 4) Do planes fly in bad weather?
- 5) Is it expensive to travel by plane?
- 6) Does Mrs. Smith like the idea to go to Liverpool by ship?
- 7) What kind of transport will the Smiths go to Liverpool by?
- 8) Say what way of travelling you like best of all. Why?



### 4. Act out the story above. Work in groups of five.

### 5. Agree or disagree.

- 1) Travelling is very popular nowadays.
- 2) The fastest way of travelling is by train.
- 3) Travelling by plane is slower than by train.
- 4) Travelling by car hasn't got any advantages.
- 5) Travelling means getting about town, too.
- 6) Trains are more comfortable than buses.
- 7) Train tickets are always more expensive than bus tickets.
- 8) Train journeys are more interesting than bus journeys.



### 6. Imagine you are a guide of a travel agency. Give a piece of advice to travellers for a better way of travelling.

**You may use:** you can get there very fast; you can make your own time; is very popular for pleasure (for business)  
When travelling by ... you can ...



### THE BEST WAY OF TRAVELLING

#### 1) Make it clear what means of transport is:

- the fastest
- the most comfortable
- the most pleasant
- the best way to learn more interesting things
- the most boring way of travelling
- the best way to enjoy natural scenes

#### 2) Do a questionnaire, a chart and a report as in ex. 4, page 75.



**Homework**

WB ex.2 - p.52



## Lesson 8

**1. Read and complete the sentences with the adverbs.**

- 1) Everybody heard a loud sound. The plane landed ... .
- 2) This train is very slow. I don't like moving ... .
- 3) This room is very comfortable. Everyone likes to feel himself ... .
- 4) The ship was old and slow. They couldn't sail ... .

**2. Complete the letter. Use 'too much', 'too many' or 'not enough'.**

Hello, everybody!

I live in Istanbul. It is a beautiful city. But there are ... .. people living here. There is ... .. work for them. There is ... .. traffic. Also there ... .. parks and children have to play in the streets.

Aylin.

**3. Complete the sentences with the words in brackets. Use 'too' or 'enough' as in the example.**

**Example:** I can't drink this tea. It's ... (hot).

*I can't drink this tea. It's **too hot**.*

- 1) My father didn't like this coffee. It was ... .. for him (weak).
- 2) I don't like this cake. It's ... .. for me (dry).
- 3) We need a new TV set. This one is not ... .. (good).
- 4) They didn't stay at that hotel. It wasn't ... .. (comfortable).
- 5) Don't go! This voyage is ... .. (dangerous).
- 6) It's not a difficult job but it's ... .. (troublesome).

**4. Choose the correct tense form of the verb.**

- 1) I ... in the registration card yet.  
a) haven't filled   b) didn't fill   c) don't fill



- 2) The train ... in five minutes.  
a) arrived   b) will arrive   c) arrives
- 3) Howard usually ... on business.  
a) will travel   b) travelled   c) travels

**5. Open the brackets and put the verbs into the correct forms.**

**Example:** 1) Liz (*to travel*) by plane very often.

*Liz travels by plane very often.*

- 2) His parents (*to enjoy*) travelling by sea last July.
- 3) John (*to travel*) light last winter holidays.
- 4) The passengers just (*to take*) safety belts to fasten them.
- 5) Susan usually (*to travel*) by bus or train.
- 6) Her friends (*to travel*) by bus round Europe last year.
- 7) Last summer Mary's journey (*to be*) through the South of Italy.

**6. Change each sentence into the negative and interrogative forms.**

- 1) We shall catch a bus to the railway station.
- 2) The doorman at the hotel took our suitcases and pointed the way to the desk-clerk yesterday evening.
- 3) Her friends will take a taxi to the airport in twenty minutes.
- 4) Mark often travelled on business last year.
- 5) They have just arrived.
- 6) We had a pleasant and enjoyable voyage on the Black Sea last summer.
- 7) She has been to Spain already.

**7. Ask questions using the words in brackets as in the example.**

**Example:** We'll have a longer stop in Poltava. (*Where*)

*Where shall we have a longer stop?*

- 1) David will go to Turkey by ship. (*How*)
- 2) Mary booked tickets to Berlin last Monday. (*Who*)
- 3) His train usually arrives in Kharkiv at 5.00. (*When*)
- 4) We shall have a longer stop in Zhmerynka in two hours. (*Where*)
- 5) This train from Lviv always runs on time. (*What train*)
- 6) She hasn't written the place and date of her birth in the personal registration card at a hotel. (*Why*)
- 7) Their train arrived to London 5 minutes ago. (*When*)
- 8) I haven't taken a bus to Zhytomyr yet. (*Where*)





## Lessons 9-10

### 1. Speak on the following items.

- 1) When do you usually travel?
- 2) Where do you go?
- 3) Do you collect information about the places you'd like to visit?
- 4) Do you think it's useful or not?
- 5) When do you start preparing for your trip?
- 6) Do you like to take photos of different places?
- 7) Do you think that travelling teaches you a lot of new things?
- 8) What do you think the point of travelling is?
- 9) What places would you like to visit?
- 10) What do you like better: to travel alone or in a group? Why?
- 11) Do you know anything about the travellers of the past?

### 2. a) Imagine you've been to a foreign country.

**Give the answers to the questions.**

A: Have you ever been to a foreign country?

What country have you been to?

B: ...

A: Where and with whom were you there?

B: ...

A: How did you get there? Was it difficult to buy tickets?

B: ...

A: How long did it take you to get there?

B: ...

A: Did you take a lot of suitcases and bags with you?

B: ...

A: Did you find a cheap or an expensive hotel?

B: ...

### b) Act out the dialogue. Work in pairs.

### 3. Write a paragraph about what travelling is. Use the tables:



People like to travel

alone.  
with friends.  
with parents.  
with a dog.  
with grandparents.

When they travel they like to

go shopping.  
meet new people.  
make new friends.  
go sightseeing.  
learn traditions and customs.



Usually they travel	on business.
	for pleasure.
	to see the beauty of the world.
	for study.

And still travelling	gives us experience.
	teaches us to understand other people.
	helps to study geography, history and languages.

But sometimes it can be	tiring.	Because travelling is	exciting.
	expensive.		useful.
	dangerous.		enjoyable.
	troublesome.		good for health.



#### 4. Role-play on the following situations. Work in pairs.

- a) Imagine your classmate has to get to London very quickly, but he/she is afraid of going by plane. He/she has never travelled by plane. Persuade<sup>1</sup> him/her to fly by plane. Explain why you think it is the best means of transport.
- b) Your friend has just come from London. He has been there for the first time. Ask him about his journey.

### PROJECT WORK

#### USEFUL TIPS FOR TRAVELLERS

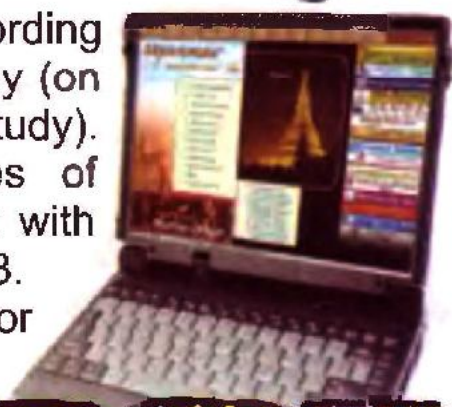
- 1) Work in a group. Brainstorm the ideas.  
Give some pieces of advice.

##### Example:

- If you want to learn English, you should take some English books and phrase books.
- If you want to sunbathe, you should take a swimming costume, sunglasses and a towel.

- 2) Group up your advice according to different kinds of journey (on business, for pleasure and for study). Are there any common pieces of advice? If yes, start your leaflet with them ... Use the tables of exercise 3.

- 3) Design your leaflet. Stick photos or make drawings.



<sup>1</sup>to persuade [pə'sweɪd] — переконувати



## Lessons 1-2



## 1. Listen and talk. Work in pairs.

**Terry:** We don't have enough information about Japan.

**Lilly:** Have you already been to the library?

**Terry:** Yes, I have. There are maps and atlases there. But we need some more information.

**Lilly:** Are there any books about Japan in our library?

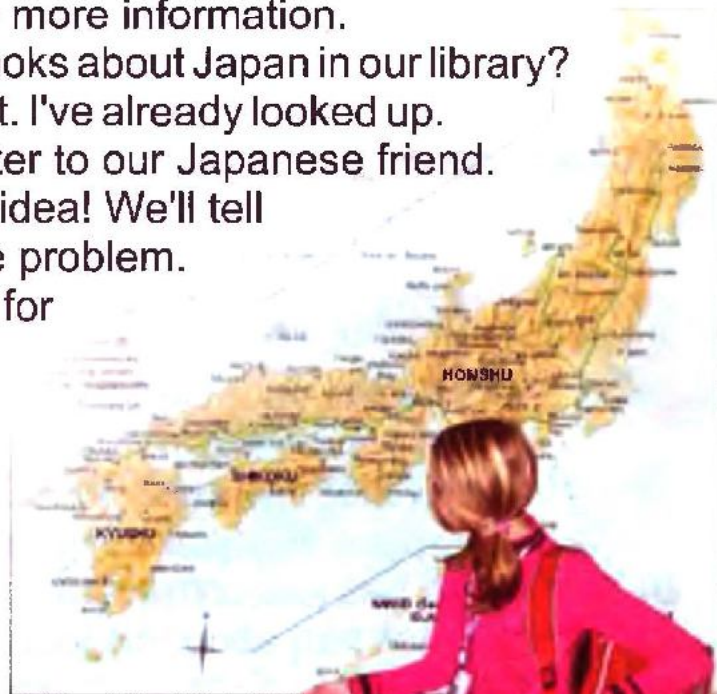
**Terry:** No, there aren't. I've already looked up.

**Lilly:** Let's write a letter to our Japanese friend.

**Terry:** That's a good idea! We'll tell them about the problem.

Then we'll ask for information.

**Lilly:** All right. Let's start writing the letter.



## 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Have Terry and Lilly enough information about Japan?
- 2) What has Terry already done?
- 3) What is there in the library about Japan?
- 4) What's Lilly's idea?

## 3. Ask and answer.

- 1) Do you like to imagine that you are travelling to some places?
- 2) What imaginary places do you travel to?
- 3) Who do you travel with?
- 4) How do you travel? Do you take a map and a compass ['kæmpəs] or do you just imagine things?
- 5) Is it more interesting to travel when you have a map and a compass?
- 6) What can you learn when you imagine that you are travelling?



## NEW VOCABULARY

**the North** [nɔ:θ]

**the South** [saʊθ]

**the East** [i:st]

**the West** [west]



## REMEMBER!

article **THE**  
**the** Black Sea  
**the** Dniro  
**the** Carpathians  
**the** British Isles  
**the** Sahara





#### 4. Listen and act out. Work in groups.

**Lilly:** Good afternoon, boys and girls! Welcome to our quiz "Who knows Geography the best?"

**John:** Can you say what the smallest country in the world is?

**Lilly:** The clues are: a) Luxembourg  
b) The Vatican City c) Andorra

**Jack:** Luxembourg.

**Lilly:** Not correct.

**Sally:** The Vatican City.

**John:** Yes, it is! It's Vatican City — the smallest country in the world!

**Lilly:** Question number two: what is the biggest city in the world?

**John:** The clues are: a) New York b) Mexico City c) Tokyo

**Tom:** Is it New York?

**John:** No, it isn't.

**Sally:** Is it Mexico City?

**Lilly:** Yes, you are right! Mexico City is the largest city in the world.

**John:** And now ...

#### 5. Work in a group. Make up a quiz. Use the information from the boxes and from ex.4.

##### Continents

Europe ['jʊərəp] — 43,400,200 sq km  
Africa — 30,300,000 sq km  
North America — 24,247,000 sq km  
South America — 18,280,000 sq km  
Antarctica — 13,975,500 sq km

##### Rivers

The Mississippi — 6,420 km  
The Amazon — 6,437 km  
The Nile [naɪ] — 6,670 km

##### Oceans

the Pacific — 179,700,000 sq km  
the Atlantic — 93,360,000 sq km  
the Indian — 74,900,000 sq km  
the Arctic — 13,100,000 sq km

##### Mountains

Mont Blanc — 4,807 m  
Kilimangaro — 5,895 m  
Elbrus — 5,642 m  
Everest — 8,848 m





## Lesson 3

## GRAMMAR POINT

## Означений артикль THE

вживайте перед іменниками, що означають:

1) єдині свого роду предмети та явища:

**the** sun, **the** earth, **the** sky

2) певні географічні назви:

— моря (seas): **the** Mediterranean Sea

— річки (rivers): **the** Amazon

— гори (mountains): **the** Alps

— півострови (peninsulas): **the** Crimea

— острови та групи островів (islands):

**the** British Isles, **the** Philippines

— пустелі (deserts):

**the** Sahara

— визначні споруди

або місця:

**the** Acropolis,

**the** National Gallery

— цілу національність,

цілу сім'ю:

**the** Germans, **the** French,

**the** Smiths, **the** Browns

Артикль **the** не вживається із:

1) іменами людей та назвами

міст, вулиць.

**George** is from **Leeds**.

**Linda** lives in **Green Street**.

2) назвами країн

та континентів:

Spain, England, Africa, America

**Але:** **the** USA

**the** United Kingdom

**the** republic of Congo

**1. Brush up the use of articles. Fill in the sentences with the article 'a' or 'the'. Explain your choice.**

1) I saw ... Moon last night.

2) I saw ... star last night.

3) ... British Isles are washed by ... English Channel on ... south-east.

4) ... Nile is ... river.

5) ... parrot is ... bird.

6) Which ocean is bigger — ... Pacific or ... Atlantic?

7) ... film we saw yesterday was ... comedy.

8) ... Robinsons live in ... small flat.

**2. Fill in the sentences with 'the' where necessary.**

1) ... Sphinx is in ... Egypt.

2) ... Chicago River flows south towards ... Gulf of ... Mexico.

3) ... Regent Street is a street in the West End of ... London. It runs between ... Oxford Circus and ... Piccadilly Circus.



- 4) ... National Gallery faces ... Trafalgar square.
- 5) ... Canary Islands are popular with British people for a holiday at ... seaside.
- 6) ... Volga flows from ... Valdai Hills to ... Caspian Sea.
- 7) Where are ... British Isles?
- 8) ... Margaret lives in ... Vienna. It is in ... Austria.
- 9) You can find beautiful collections in ... Tate Gallery.
- 10) We get tea mostly from ... China and Ceylon.
- 11) ... Danube rises in ... Germany and flows through ... Vienna in ... Austria, ... Budapest in ... Hungary, and through ... Romania and ... Moldavia, and finally into ... Black Sea.
- 12) They brought the potato to ... Europe from ... America.
- 13) ... Mary speaks ... English very well.
- 14) ... British are conservative nation.
- 15) Have you written a letter to ... Johnsons?

### 3. Use the article 'the' where necessary.

- 1) ... Statue of Liberty was a gift from ... France to ... United States.
- 2) ... Donald and ... Sarah went to school yesterday.
- 3) On our trip to ... USA we crossed ... Atlantic Ocean.
- 4) ... Nickolas is the youngest son of ... Browns.
- 5) He lived in ... South-East, then he moved to ... North.
- 6) Some seas have names of colours: ... Black Sea, ... Red Sea, ... Yellow Sea.
- 7) ... Fleet Street in London took its name from ... Fleet River, which till 1765 ran into ... Thames.
- 8) His ship nearly sank in ... Pacific.
- 9) The article tells about the events in ... Asia and in ... Africa.
- 10) My uncle has been to ... Latin America.
- 11) ... Asia is between ... Black Sea and ... Mediterranean Sea.
- 12) ... Mount Blanc is the highest peak of ... Alps.
- 13) ... Aladdin was a lazy boy.
- 14) In one of the cities of ... China there lived ... Mustapha.
- 15) This man is ... English.
- 16) Thousands of people go to ... Crimea in summer.
- 17) What is the capital of ... Canada?
- 18) ... Pamirs, which are called ... "Roof of ... world", are in ... Asia.
- 19) ... Caucasus Mountains are between ... Black sea and ... Caspian Sea.





## Lesson 4

## 1. Read and discuss in groups.

# DIFFERENT COUNTRIES, DIFFERENT PLACES

Our world has many faces. It is different in its beauty. There are lots of wonders in the world. Since ancient times men have travelled to different countries and continents and have sailed across different seas and oceans. People have always wanted to know the world better.

The "English Bridge" group has received many letters from different countries. The Canadian School Magazine "The Winni Peggies" is our new friend. The Canadian friends introduce their country here.



Meet Canada! It is the second largest country in the world. It covers 9,976,185 square kilometres. This area is as big as the whole Europe. The population is 27 million people. It is less than half the population of Britain.

Most of the Canadians have their roots in families of immigrants from European countries: the United Kingdom and Ireland, France and Germany. Today a lot of immigrants come from Asia. The original population were the Eskimos and the Indians. Most of them live in the north of Canada.

In winter Canada is very cold and has a lot of snow. Winter sports are very popular here.

For many years Britain and France fought for Canada. It is an



independent country now. But the British Queen is still the head of the state. Most of the population speak English, but about 6 million Canadians speak French.

This is the CN Tower in Toronto. Toronto is the largest city in Canada. Other big cities are Montreal, Vancouver and Calgary. We live in Winnipeg. The capital is Ottawa. It is not very big but comfortable.



## 2. Complete the sentences.

- 1) The world is different ...
- 2) We can see lots of ...
- 3) Since ancient times men ...
- 4) People have always wanted ...

## 3. Say if it is true or false.

- 1) Canada is the second largest country in the world.
- 2) The number of population of Canada is as big as of Great Britain.
- 3) Canada isn't an independent country, because the British Queen is the head of the state.
- 4) Most of Eskimos and Indians live in the north.
- 5) The population speaks English and French.
- 6) Ottawa is the biggest city in Canada.
- 7) "The Winni Peggies" group is from Winnipeg.
- 8) Winnipeg is the capital of Canada.



### NEW VOCABULARY

*an immigrant*

[ˈɪmɪgrənt]

*the United Kingdom*

[juːˈnaɪtɪdˈkɪŋdəm]

*original* [əˈrɪdʒɪnəl]

*to cover* [ˈkʌvə]



### REMEMBER!

fight — fought — **fought** [fɔ:t]  
bring — brought — **brought** [brɔ:t]

## 4. Ask and answer.



Is Canada a large country?  
Are the winters cold there?  
What is the largest city in Canada?  
Is Ottawa a small city?  
What languages do they speak in Canada?  
What is the population of the country?  
What is Canada today?



### Homework

WB ex.1 - p.58



## Lesson 5

### 1. Read the letters and talk about these countries and cities.



Dear "English Bridge",

I live in Cairo. It is the capital of Egypt. Egypt is in the north of Africa. The Red Sea is to the east, the Mediterranean Sea is to the north. Cairo is the largest and busiest city in Africa. The summers are hot and dry. The language of Egypt is Arabic.

Welcome to Egypt! There are many places to see. The Egyptian [i'dʒɪpʃən] Museum, the Sphinx and the monumental pyramids are some of the places of interest in Egypt. Said<sup>1</sup>.

Hello, "English Bridge",

I live in Mexico City, the capital of Mexico. It is the largest city in the world. Over 19 million people live there. Mexico is in the south of North America. The Gulf<sup>2</sup> of Mexico is to the east, the Pacific Ocean is to the west.

Mexico covers more than 950,000 square kilometers.

It is a Spanish-speaking country. We've got lots of tourists in Mexico City every year. They go to see "The City of the Gods" nearby. It is one of the most important and interesting places from ancient Mexico.

Chita.



### 2. Choose a), b) or c) and complete the sentences.

- 1) Cairo is the capital of ...  
a) Spain b) Mexico c) Egypt
- 2) The largest city in Africa is ...  
a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Pretoria
- 3) They speak ... in Egypt. a) Arabic b) Spanish c) English

### NEW VOCABULARY

**northern** ['nɔ:ðən]

**southern** ['sʌðən]

**eastern** ['i:stən]

**western** ['westən]

<sup>1</sup>Said [sa'id] — (ім'я) Саїд

<sup>2</sup>a gulf [gʌlf] — протока



- 4) There is ... to the east of Egypt.  
 a) the Mediterranean Sea b) the Red Sea c) the Black Sea
- 5) The largest city of the world is ...  
 a) Madrid b) Cairo c) Mexico City
- 6) Mexico is ...  
 a) in the south of South America  
 b) in the north of North America  
 c) in the south of North America
- 7) Tourist go to Mexico City to see ...  
 a) the Sphinx b) "The City of the Gods" c) the Pyramids

**3. Look at the maps of Great Britain and Canada.  
 Ask and answer as in the example.**



Where's Cardiff?

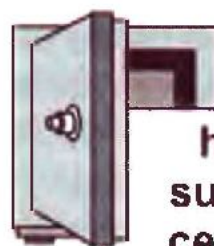
It's in the south-east of Wales.



**4. Fill in the presentations with the words from the Word Bank.**

I live in Madrid. It is the ... of Spain. It is in the ... of the country. It is a big city with a ... of 3 million people. Madrid is very ... and ... in the summer but it is cold in the winter. There are lots of things to do and ... to go.

I live in New York. It is one of the most ... cities in the USA. It is also the ... city. ... come to see the skyscrapers<sup>1</sup>. People come to see one of the most ... statues in the ... : the Statue of Liberty.



Word Bank

hot  
sunny  
center  
population  
places  
capital  
famous  
business  
tourists  
important  
world

**5. Write to "The Winni Peggies" in Canada. Tell about your town or city. Send them a postcard.**

- Where do you live?
- How many people are there?
- What is the weather like?
- What are the places of interest?



**REMEMBER!**

<b>N</b> = north	<b>NE</b> = north-east
<b>S</b> = south	<b>SE</b> = south-east
<b>E</b> = east	<b>SW</b> = south-west
<b>W</b> = west	<b>NW</b> = north-west



**Homework**

WB ex.1 - p.59

<sup>1</sup>skyscraper ['skaɪ,skreɪpə] — хмарочос





## Lesson 6

### 1. a) Before listening discuss the following items.

- Who can give you some information about the places of interest?
- Have you ever been on a sightseeing tour?
- Have you ever looked at the leaflets with the information for tourists?
- What kind of information can you read in a leaflet?



### b) Listen to the dialogue and answer the questions.



- 1) Who is talking? Where are they?
- 2) What has the man already seen in London?
- 3) What did he look at?
- 4) What place of interest did he choose?
- 5) Has he ever travelled on a double-decker?
- 6) Are there any double-deckers in London's streets nowadays?
- 7) What will the man start with? Why?



### 2. Read the article and answer the question below.



Do you know where people live in different parts of the world? It is clear that in crowded cities there are skyscrapers and blocks of flats, where people live in a small space.



But people who move a lot to find food and water, for example, in the Sahara Desert, live in tents. In Hong Kong a lot of people are fishermen, and their families live in boats all the time. In some parts of Australia, where it's very hot, people live in underground caves<sup>1</sup>.

- What kind of houses do people live in all over the world?



<sup>1</sup>cave [keɪv] — пещера



3. Match the text with the leaflet. Discuss in pairs what place to see.



- 1) The Tower of London is on the River Thames next to the Tower Bridge. You can visit a place, see the Crown Jewels and a real Yeoman Warder! Open every day.
- 2) London Zoo, Regent's Park London. Open every day. Opening Hours: Monday to Saturday 9 a.m. 6 p.m. Sunday 10 a.m. 6 p.m.
- 3) Sightseeing Tours by London Taxi: Tower Bridge, Trafalgar Square, Buckingham Palace, St. Paul's Cathedral, Big Ben, Houses of Parliament and others. See all the main sights with stops to take a photo. Black Taxi Tours telephone: 01712894371.
- 4) Madame Tussaud's. Mary Bebone Road, London NW1 5LR. Come and find out who's in and who's out. Life-size wax figures of famous people. Madam Tussaud's is open from 10 a.m. to 5.30 p.m. every day. 7 Durweston Street.

**NEW VOCABULARY**

**a double-decker** [ˌdʌbəl'deɪkə]

**a leaflet** ['li:flɪt]

**a sightseeing tour** ['saɪt,si:ŋ'tʊə]

- **all over the world**
- **to have a look**



4. Listen and learn the poem.

**OTHER PLACES**

Now mix me a colour that nobody knows,  
 And paint me a country where  
 nobody goes,  
 And put in it people a little like you,  
 Watching a strange country is always new.  
 (from "The Paint Box" by E. V. Rieu)



**Homework**

WB ex.2 - p.61



## Lesson 7

### 1. Listen and read.



## THOR HEYERDAHL'S JOURNEY ACROSS THE ATLANTIC

*Thor Heyerdahl [θɔ: 'heɪəda:l] is a traveller from Norway. He lived for many years on islands in the Pacific Ocean. Thor travelled to Africa to discover interesting facts.*

Thor Heyerdahl was interested in different countries and the people who lived there. He noticed that some things were the same in different parts of the world. He noticed how statues and old stories in South America were the same in the islands in the Pacific Ocean. He thought that people travelled from South America to the islands many years ago. In 1947, he made a wooden raft, which he called Kon-Tiki, and made his journey.

In the 1960s, he started to look at America and Africa and again he noticed that some things were the same. There were pyramids in Egypt and also in South America. He noticed that statues in the two places were similar. He knew that people in both places made boats from reeds<sup>1</sup>. Did the people from Africa sail across the Atlantic Ocean to America many years ago? This was the question he asked. So, he decided to make this journey himself.

In 1969, he built a boat from the reed that grew along the River Nile. The boat was just like the boats, which the Ancient Egyptians made. He sailed west towards<sup>2</sup> America, but after 4,500 kilometres the boat sank<sup>3</sup>.

The next year, Thor Heyerdahl tried again. He built another reed boat. He started his journey from Morocco. Fifty-seven days later he landed on the island of Barbados. He sailed right across the Atlantic Ocean. What if the other people made the same journey 4,000 years ago?



<sup>1</sup>reed [ri:d] — очерет

<sup>2</sup>towards [tə'wɔ:dz] — (у напрямі) до

<sup>3</sup>sank [sæŋk] the 2nd form

of the verb to sink — тонути



## 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Who is Thor Heyerdahl?
- 2) What was he interested in?
- 3) What did he notice?
- 4) What did he think about the people from South America?
- 5) Where can you see the pyramids and ancient statues?
- 6) What question did Heyerdahl ask?
- 7) What did he decide to do?
- 8) Was his first raft journey successful?
- 9) Where did he start his second journey from?  
What did he cross? Where did he land?
- 10) How did he explain the presence of the same things  
in South America and Africa?

## 3. You've read a story with some facts about a real person. Look at the pictures and tell what you have learnt.



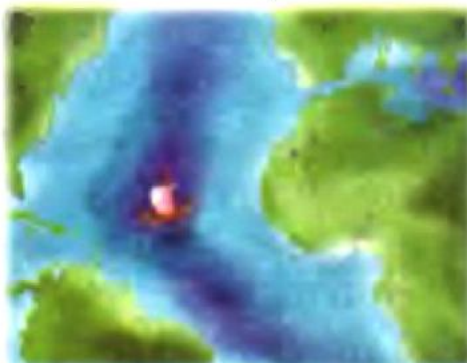
Thor Heyerdahl noticed ...



There was a question ...



So, he decided to ...



He started his second journey ...

## 4. Say what you know about some other travellers and their journeys. Use the following:

to discover, to get to know, to decide, to understand, to sail, to land,  
to start the journey, to cross, to go around, to move towards





## Lesson 8

## 1. Read and compare.

I have done my homework. (Present Perfect)

I did my homework yesterday. (Past Simple)

## PAST SIMPLE TENSE

вказує на дію,  
яка мала місце  
у минулому, часто із  
зазначенням часу.

I went to Paris in **1987**.  
I saw the President  
**last summer**.

## PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

вказує на дію, яка хоча і почалась  
у минулому, але має зв'язок із  
теперішнім (завершилась або  
продовжує тривати і впливає на  
теперішню ситуацію).

I have been to Paris already.  
(*And I can tell about the city.*)  
I have never seen the Pyramids.  
(*And I would like to see the place.*)

## 2. Make up the questions.

Have	you	ever	done it?	What		I	do?
	we		seen it?	Where		you	do it?
	they		eaten it?	Why	did	we	see it?
			bought it?	When		they	eat it?
				How		she	buy it?

## 3. Read the sentence choosing the correct tense form of the verb in brackets.

- 1) My brother (**finished** / **has finished**) school last year.
- 2) His sister (**didn't finish** / **hasn't finished**) school yet.
- 3) I (**haven't seen** / **didn't see**) Tom today.
- 4) (**Have you met** / **did you meet**) before?  
Yes, we (**have met** / **met**) once.  
It (**was** / **has been**) in Spain.

## 4. Put Yes/No and Wh-questions to the following sentences. Use correct tense forms of the verbs.

**Example:** I've been to the United States.

*Have you ever been to the United States?*

I went there in 1995.

I tried Indian food there.

I live in Kyiv.

I've lived there all my life.

My granny has written a letter.

She wrote a letter last night.

I did my work this morning.

I have done lots of work.



### 5. Practise the dialogues in pairs. Use the words from the boxes.

a) A: Have you ever studied English before?

B: Yes, I have.

A: Where did you study it?

B: I studied it at school.

French  
German  
Spanish  
Russian

at evening classes  
at home  
at college

b) C: Have you ever seen a fire?

D: Oh, yes, I have.

C: When did you see it?

D: I saw one in Manchester in 1976.

in 1969  
in 1977  
in 1993  
in 1985

a Queen  
the President  
an elephant

### 6. Complete the dialogues as in the example.

**Example:**

A: **Have** you ever **seen** a giraffe?

B: Yes, I **have**.

A: Where **did** you **see** it?

B: I **saw** one at the Zoo.

1) A: Have they ever met a famous person?

B: Yes, they have.

A: Who did they ... ?

B: They ... the President.

2) A: ... you ever ... in hospital?

B: Yes, I have.

A: Why ... you in hospital?

B: Because I ... very ill.

3) A: Has she ... been to Kyiv?

B: Yes, she ...

A: When was she there?

B: She ... there last summer.

### 7. Read and speak of what Mr. Sorry and Mr. Jolly say. Do as in the example.

**Example:** (play football)

Mr. Jolly: I played football when I was young.

Mr. Sorry: I've never played football.



◀ This is Mr. Jolly.  
Mr. Jolly did a lot of things when he was young.

This is Mr. Sorry. ▶  
Mr. Sorry has never done anything.



1) read books

2) sing songs

3) write stories

4) go to Ukraine

5) play snowballs

6) ride a bicycle

7) do parties

8) learn French

9) paint pictures

10) meet a Ukrainian

11) go skiing

12) work hard



## Homework

WB ex.2 - p.63



## Lessons 9-10

1. a) *Make up the questions for a quiz.*
- b) *Do the quiz in class.*

# IT'S A SUPERLATIVE WORLD

1) Which / high / waterfall / world?

- a) *Angel Falls (Venezuela)*
- b) *Victoria Falls (Zimbabwe)*
- c) *Niagara Falls (USA/Canada)*

**Example:** Which is the highest waterfall in the world?

(a)



(b)



(c)



2) Which / large / continent / world?

- a) *America* b) *Africa* c) *Asia*

3) Which / far / planet / from the sun?

- a) *Neptune* b) *Pluto* c) *Uranus*

4) Which / deep / ocean / world?

- a) *Indian* b) *Atlantic* c) *Pacific*

5) Where / the Eiffel Tower?

- a) *in London* b) *in Paris* c) *in New York*

6) Where / the Statue of Liberty?

- a) *in Washington* b) *in New York* c) *in London*

7) How many / continents?

- a) *five* b) *four* c) *six*

8) What / the capital of Italy?

- a) *Madrid* b) *Cairo* c) *Rome*



(a)



(b)



(c)







**2. Work in a group of four. Find the information about London. Role-play your quiz game.**

**A. You are the London Quizmaster.**

**B. C. D. You are the members of the game.**

Use the questions like these:

- How old is the Tower of London?
- How long is the River Thames?
- What's this? (Show a photo of London's sight.)
- How high is Big Ben?



**3. Role-play in pairs. Choose a city.**

**A.: You are the Tour Information Officer.**

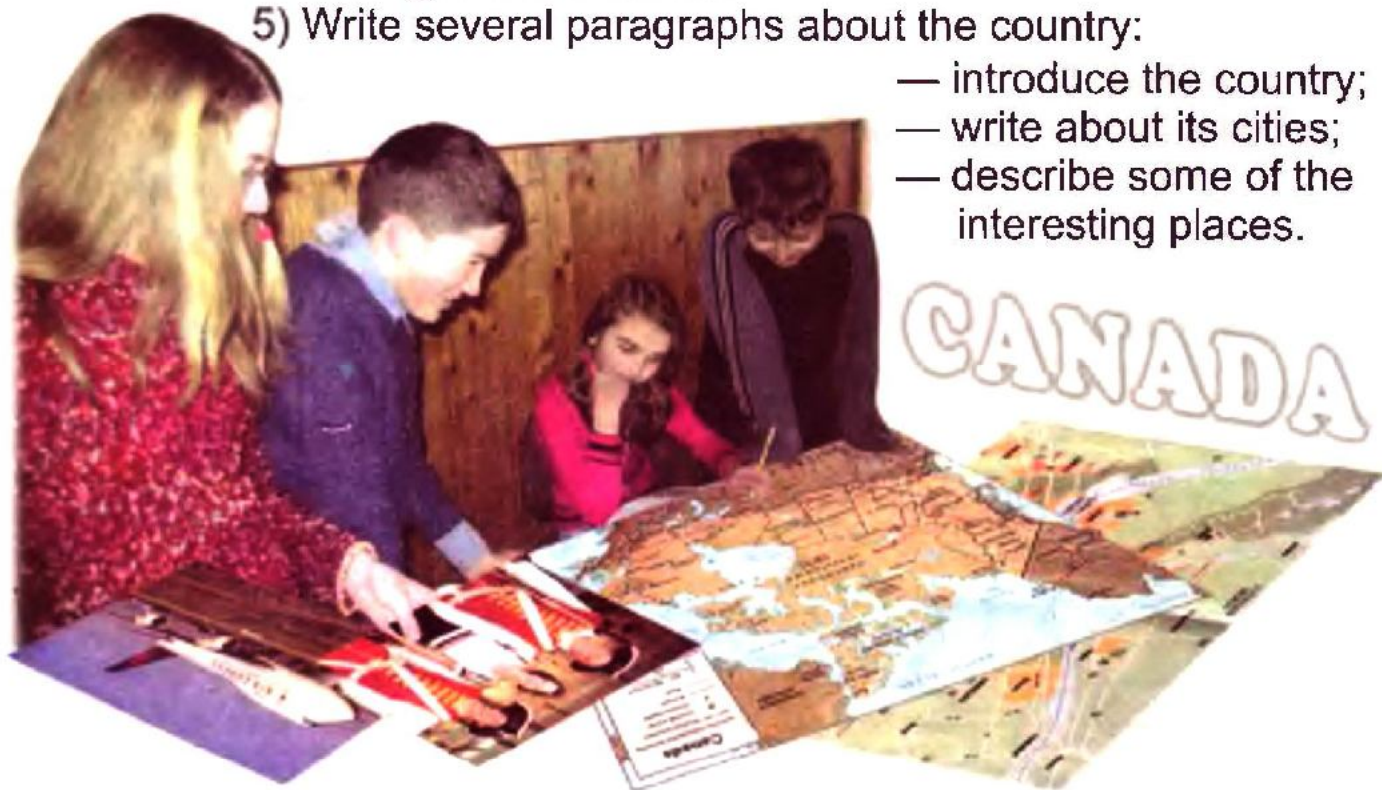
**B.: You've just come to the city. You want some information about tours or places of interest.**



### **GET TO KNOW A FOREIGN COUNTRY**

- 1) Work in group. Choose a country and find some information about it from an atlas, an encyclopedia, the Internet or travel leaflets.
- 2) Draw a map of the country.
- 3) Find some pictures or photos. Put them round your map.
- 4) Label<sup>1</sup> the most important cities, the longest rivers and the highest mountains.
- 5) Write several paragraphs about the country:

- introduce the country;
- write about its cities;
- describe some of the interesting places.



- 6) Display your poster in class.

<sup>1</sup>to label ['leɪbəl] — приклеювати, позначати



## Lessons 1-2



## 1. Listen and act out. Work in a group of four.



Olena: Have you heard the news?

Iryna: What news?

Lilia: Some British guests are going to come to school!

Iryna: When?

Lilia: On Spring holidays.

Iryna: Are they going to stay for long?

Olena: No, just for several days. What about preparing something interesting at school?

Lilia: What, for example?

Olena: A kind of international festival ...

Iryna: ... or a tour about the city?

Lilia: I think the School Board<sup>1</sup> has worked out the programme already.

Olena: So do I.

Iryna: Why don't we ask Olha Serhiyivna?



## 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) What news has Olena heard?
- 2) When are they going to come?
- 3) What do children suggest?
- 4) What does Lilia think?



## REMEMBER!

- I think it is interesting.
- **So** do I.
- I don't think we can do it.
- **Neither** do I.

3. Can you think of any reasons<sup>1</sup> for travelling to Ukraine?  
Complete the Word Map.



## NEW VOCABULARY

a **craft** [krɑ:ft]

a **craft work**

a **craftsman** ['krɑ:ftsmən]

**embroidery** [im'brɔɪdəri]

**embroidered towel**

• **to work out**

<sup>1</sup>School Board [bɔ:d] — керівництво школи

<sup>2</sup>a reason ['ri:zən] — причина





#### 4. Listen and talk. Work in a group of three.



**Olha Serhiyivna:** Some boys from senior<sup>1</sup> classes will meet the guests at the airport. They will help them to get to the hotel. Next day they are going to visit our school.

**Terry:** ... And have an International Twelve O'clock Tea. I read the British are great tea drinkers.

**O.S.:** Well, the talk around the table is a good way of communication. I like the idea, Terry.

**Lilly:** And we can make an exhibition of the Ukrainian Folk Art: embroidered towels, wooden souvenirs, pysankas ...

**O.S.:** Yes, it's important to give our guests the idea about Ukraine and its people. Are there any other ideas?



#### 5. Think about something that can be unusual and surprising to foreigners about our country. Make a list of these things.

6. Imagine some English schoolchildren decided to spend their summer holidays in Ukraine this year. They are your guests. Try to give a piece of advice or suggest something interesting. You know that boys and girls enjoy different activities on holidays.



**Use:** fencing  
arts and crafts  
boating  
living in tents  
climbing  
drama and music

puppet show  
football  
riding bicycles  
tennis  
playing games  
disco party

visiting a  
(an)

museum  
circus  
festival  
gallery  
exhibition  
theatre



### Homework

L1 WB ex.1 - p.66; L2 WB ex.2 - p.67

<sup>1</sup>seniour ['si:nia] — старший



## GRAMMAR POINT

**So/Nor (neither) +**  
допоміжне дієслово

Цю конструкцію використовуйте, коли погоджуєтесь із попереднім висловлюванням.

**So** вживається, коли погоджуємось із твердженням.

"I can swim."

"**So** can I."

**Nor/neither** вживається, коли погоджуємось із запереченням.

"I don't like maths."

"**Nor** do I."

Увага! У конструкції **so/nor** вживаємо допоміжне дієслово тієї часової форми, яка використовується у попередньому висловлюванні.

"He saw the film yesterday."

"**So** did I."

"He hasn't seen this film."

"**Nor** have I."

### 1. Choose 'so' or 'nor' to agree as in the example.

**Example:** 1) Mike didn't wash the car. (**So/Nor**) did I. Nor did I.

2) Harry is going to travel around the world. (**So/Nor**) is Mary.

3) I don't want to go by train. (**So/Nor**) does he.

4) James enjoys the journey around Ukraine. (**So/Nor**) does Betty.

5) We were going on holidays. (**So/Nor**) were our friends.

### 2. Agree with everything Bob says. Use 'So ...' / 'Nor ...'.



1) I am good at Maths. **You:** So am I.

2) I have never been late to school.

So/Nor am I.

3) I don't like PT lessons.

4) I am not going to ride a bike.

5) I wasn't at school yesterday.

6) I helped mum about the house.

7) I usually go to bed at 10 p.m.

8) I am a good footballer.



## HELPFUL TIPS

### Revision (Повторення)

- Revise things regularly.
- Check the grammar rules.
- Test yourself on the vocabulary.
- Practise using everyday expressions.



### 3. Revise the reflexive pronouns and don't forget to teach yourself.

a) Use the correct reflexive pronoun and tell what the children teach them selves.



I am teaching  
myself to play  
tennis.

He is  
teaching  
... to play  
football.



We are teaching ...  
to ... ..



They are teaching ... to ... ..



She is teaching ...  
to ... ..

b) Write about what  
you have ever  
taught yourself.

I have ... ..

.....  
.....  
.....

### 4. Complete the sentences with correct reflexive pronouns.

- 1) We fell down and hurt ... .
- 2) Mother gave me the food and said: "Help ... !"
- 3) People who live alone sometimes talk to ... .
- 4) When the washing machine has finished, it stops ... .
- 5) She could see ... in the mirror.
- 6) He has learnt new words by ... .



**Homework**

WB ex.2 - p.67



## 1. Read and discuss in groups.

# WELCOME TO UKRAINE!



Since August 24, 1991 Ukraine has become an independent state.

Ukraine is an undiscovered<sup>1</sup> treasure<sup>2</sup> — a beautiful and fantastic country, where visitors can spend their holidays, get to know the



## REMEMBER!

become — became — **become** [bɪ'kʌm]

history and culture of the Ukrainian people, visit the churches and monuments of a thousand-year-old culture and get a good treatment at a lot of health resorts<sup>3</sup>.

Kyiv and Lviv, Chernihiv and Donetsk, Ivano-Frankivsk and Chernivtsi, Odesa and the Crimea, the Black Sea and the Carpathian Mountains — these are just some of the remarkable places awaiting the businessmen and tourists.

Dear visitors, you can enjoy some of the finest dishes in Eastern Europe and try Ukrainian borsch and varenyky, Chicken a la Kyiv, the rolled, filled pancakes, or delicious Ukrainian brown bread. But be prepared for a different style of service. Bring your sense of humour. It'll help you to come out of any troublesome situation. We are sure that you will enjoy your visit to Ukraine and come back again and again!

<sup>1</sup>undiscovered [ˌʌndɪs'kʌvəd] — незкритий

<sup>3</sup>a resort [rɪ'zɔ:t] — курорт

<sup>2</sup>treasure ['treɪzə] — скарб



## 2. Complete the sentences according to the text above.

- 1) Ukraine has become an independent state ...
- 2) Ukraine is the country where visitors can ...
- 3) Kyiv and Lviv, the Black Sea and the Carpathian Mountains are just some of ...
- 4) Visitors can enjoy ...
- 5) Every day brings ...
- 6) Bring your ...
- 7) We are sure that you will ...



## 3. Introduce your country. Use the words from the box.

national, ancient, a part of Kyiv Rus, hard-working, talented, centre of Europe, customs and traditions, language and culture, square kilometers, to symbolize

- 1) What is Ukraine?
- 2) Where is it?
- 3) Is it large?
- 4) What do you know about the history?
- 5) Is it an independent country now?
- 6) When do we celebrate the Independence Day?
- 7) What is the Capital of Ukraine?
- 8) What are the Ukrainians like?
- 9) What are the national symbols of Ukraine?



### NEW VOCABULARY

**a stereotype** ['steriətaɪp]

**a style** [stɑɪl]

**a tourist** ['tʊərɪst]

**eastern** ['i:stən]

**remarkable** [rɪ'mɑ:kəbəl]

● **a sense of humour** ['hju:mə]

## 4. You can see these typical images (stereotypes) about Ukraine in pictures and cartoons. Say if they are true.



a



b



c



# Homework

WB ex.1 - p.68



## Lesson 5

1. *Imagine you are one from the "English Bridge" group. Give the answers to your Canadian e-mail friends who want to know more about Ukraine and its lifestyle.*

DELETE PRINT FORWARD REPLY DONE

**From:** Canada  
**To:** English Bridge  
**Subject:** Ukraine

- 1) Can you tell us something about your everyday activities?
- 2) What kind of place is where you live? What is life like there?
- 3) How is life in your place different from life in other parts of Ukraine?
- 4) What places are popular for having holidays in your country?
- 5) Who are you, the "English Bridge" Group?

2. *The "English Bridge" sent the photos to "The Winni Peggies". Match the following descriptions with the photos.*



a



b



c



d

1) The children are preparing for the school Christmas party. They are acting out the scenes from the Bible<sup>1</sup>. Such group is called 'vertep'. We usually have vertep shows and sing Christmas carols.


<sup>1</sup>the Bible ['baɪbəl] — Біблія



- 2) This is the view of the Carpathians. Nothing is more beautiful than the Carpathian Mountains. Here you can see the beauty of the Carpathian nature.
- 3) The capital of our country and our native city. There are many interesting places to see in it.
- 4) Here we are: the "English Bridge" group. We are working now. We study English at school. We are interested in practising the language. That's why we make a newspaper in English and are glad to make new friends!

### 3. a) Read the Fact Files.

The highest peak <sup>1</sup> is Hoverla (2061 m).	The climate of Ukraine is continental. In the Crimea it is sub-tropical.	The largest river is the Dniro (2290 km long, 981 km of it flow through Ukraine).	The largest range of mountains is the Carpathians.
--	--	---	--



b) You meet foreign guests at school.

Give the presentation of your country to your guests.

### 4. Describe your town or region.

### 5. Imagine you are from England. Write back to England sharing your impressions of Ukraine.

### 6. Travellers in Ukraine from all over the world noticed different characteristics about the Ukrainians. Read and guess what they are.

They say, that Ukrainians	are	lazy bones. aggressive. hard-working. great tea-drinkers. kind people. great borsch lovers. talented.
	have	beautiful girls. no sense of humour.



### NEW VOCABULARY

a description

[dɪ'skrɪpʃən]

an impression

[ɪm'preʃən]

a lifestyle ['laɪfstɑɪl]

a region ['ri:dʒən]

native ['neɪtɪv]

to describe [dɪ'skraɪb]

● that's why



## Homework

WB ex.2 - p.69

<sup>1</sup>a peak [pi:k] — nɪk



## Lesson 6



### 1. a) While listening try to understand:

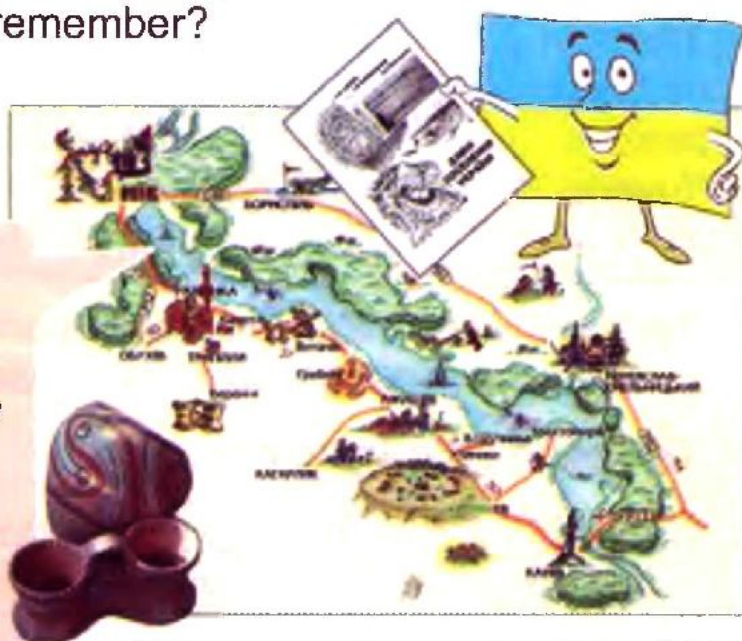
- what kind of information you are listening to;
- who this information is for.

### b) Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1) What things are the travellers allowed to take?
- 2) What can travel agency arrange?
- 3) What piece of advice can a travel agent give?
- 4) What can they advise visitors to see?
- 5) What are some of the useful tips the travellers in Ukraine should remember?

### 2. Read the cultural notes and answer the questions.

The roots of the Ukrainian nation are in Trypillian culture, the heritage<sup>1</sup> of the Scythian ['sɪθiən] tribes and Chernyakhiv culture. 80% of the population of Ukraine nowadays are the Ukrainians. The other 20% are the Russians, Byelorussians, Jews<sup>2</sup>, Crimean Tartars, Moldovians, Poles<sup>3</sup>, Hungarians, Rumanians, Greeks, Germans, Bulgarians, etc.



- Where are the roots of the 80% of the population of Ukraine?
- Who are the other 20% of the population?

### 3. Some American schoolchildren answerd the question "How do you imagine Kyiv?" in their school magazine.

#### a) Read some of their answers:

- I imagine there are many cowboys in Kyiv.
- In Kyiv they wear their Ukrainian national costumes.
- I think Kyiv is a city of a poor<sup>4</sup> country, where people are not free to do what they want.



<sup>1</sup>heritage ['herɪtɪdʒ] — спадщина

<sup>2</sup>a Jew [dʒu:] — єврей

<sup>3</sup>a Pole [pəʊl] — поляк

<sup>4</sup>poor [pʊə] — бідний



- I imagine Kyiv as a great wonderful city to live in. The children are very lucky to live there.
- It's a very hot place with palm-trees and heavy traffic<sup>1</sup>.
- It is very cold in Kyiv in winter, isn't it? Children can skate and ski all the year round.



**NEW VOCABULARY**  
 well-arranged  
 [ˌwelə'reɪndʒd]  
 to last [lɑːst]

**b) Discuss the answers above in class.**

**4. Look through the leaflet and find out the most popular tourist places and tour for foreigners in Ukraine. Think and discuss:**


Where can they


visit an ancient castle?  
 go boating in a river?  
 take part in a festival?

**Suggest some other activities.**

**RAINBOW TOUR**  
 Get to know the decoration arts and folklore ['fauklɔ:] of Ukraine!  
 Visitors can buy original souvenirs (embroidered towels or Ukrainian Easter eggs)  
**VISIT POLTAVA!**  
 It is famous for Ukrainian writers, folk crafts people, folk concerts.

**DNIPRO CRUISE**  
 Visitors can experience an exciting 1000 km journey from Kyiv to Odesa on the Dnipro, the third longest river in Europe on a comfortable ship.



**GET TO KNOW THE CRIMEA**  
  
 This wonderful journey can give you the idea about the beauty of this land. Excellent resorts, the exciting Neptun Festival and fine Crimean wines are just some points of the programme.

**5. Choose one of the tours above. Convince<sup>2</sup> your friend to join you.**



**Homework**

WB ex.1 - p.70

<sup>1</sup>heavy traffic [ˌhevi'træfɪk] — інтенсивний дорожній рух

<sup>2</sup>convince [kən'vɪns] — переконувати





1. Listen and read.

# THE BEAR AND THE BEES

( a Ukrainian Folk Tale )

Once there were some wild Bees who lived in a hollow<sup>1</sup> of a tree. One day, a Bear who thought himself to be very strong, learned about it and came to see them.

"You are very tiny<sup>2</sup> and weak, Bees!" he said. "So you must give me your honey of your own free will. If you don't, I'll uproot<sup>3</sup> the tree, take the honey and kill you all!"

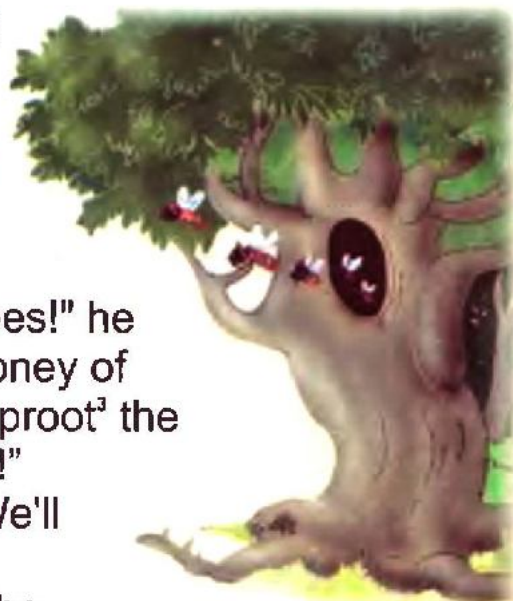
"Just you try!"<sup>4</sup> said the Bees. "We'll know how to pay you back."<sup>5</sup>

The Bear pushed his head into the hollow and stuck out his tongue to get the honey. But

the Bees flew at him and hurt his tongue, ears and nose so hard that he forgot how strong he was.

He ran away and he never heard the Bees calling after him, "Don't you ever forget, Bear, that even the tiniest bees know how to defend themselves!" said the Bees.

Now, let's learn the lesson from this story. There is strength in unity<sup>6</sup> and together with others you will be strong and able to beat any enemy.



2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Where did wild Bees live?
- 2) What did the Bear think about himself?
- 3) What did the Bear want one day?
- 4) Were the Bees afraid of the Bear? Why?
- 5) What lesson does this tale teach?

<sup>1</sup>hollow ['hɒləʊ] — дупло

<sup>2</sup>tiny ['taɪni] — крихітний

<sup>3</sup>to uproot — виривати з корінням

<sup>4</sup>Just you try! — Тільки не спробуй!

<sup>5</sup>to pay back — відплатити

<sup>6</sup>a unity ['juːnɪti] — єдність



### 3. Look at the pictures and tell the folktale.

Once  
there were  
some ...



One day ...



The Bear ...



He ran ...

### 4. a) Match the Ukrainian proverbs with the beginnings of their English equivalents. Complete the English proverbs.

1. Одна голова —  
добре, та дві краще.
2. Сміється той,  
хто сміється останнім.
3. Вчитись ніколи не пізно.
4. Про смаки не сперечаються.
5. На все є свій час.
6. Пізнаємо друга в біді.
7. Хто раніше встав —  
тому Бог дав.
8. В здоровому тілі —  
здоровий дух.

- a) Friend in need ... ..
- b) A sound mind ... ..
- c) Never late ... ..
- d) Two heads ... ..
- e) He laughs the best ... ..
- f) Early bird ... ..
- g) Tastes ... ..
- h) Everything is good ... ..

### b) Prove that folk wisdom<sup>1</sup> is international.

### 5. Prepare to tell some other Ukrainian folk tales to your English-speaking friends.



**Homework**

PB ex.5 - p.119

<sup>1</sup>wisdom ['wɪzdəm] — мудрість



## GRAMMAR POINT

### Linking words and, but, so, because

Вживайте сполучники **and**, **but**, **so** та **because** для того, щоб об'єднати речення.

- **and** продовжує думку:

I am not interested in karate **and** I can't ride a horse.

- **but** знайомить із протилежною думкою:

You are good at eating, **but** it isn't a hobby.

- **so** повідомляє про результат:

I'm not good at playing tennis, **so** I never win.

- **because** повідомляє причину:

I don't want to go on a trip **because** I'm not feeling well.

### 1. Fill in the sentences with 'and', 'but', 'so' or 'because'.

- 1) My friend is fond of football ... he is going to become a famous football player in future.
- 2) Kate can't buy this dress ... it is too expensive.
- 3) I can read English, ... I can't speak English.
- 4) The first week we spent at the seaside ... then we went to the mountains.
- 5) We haven't got any apples ... we can't make an Apple Pie for today.
- 6) Julia is very happy ... her mother has bought her a fantastic dress for the New Year party.
- 7) We can speak to her, ... we are not sure it will help.
- 8) I haven't got any brother or sister, ... I have got a wonderful friend.
- 9) The weather was terrible yesterday, ... they haven't cleaned the yard yet.
- 10) He is a good pupil at school ... he is a good sportsman, too.
- 11) The footballers are happy ... they have won the match today.
- 12) Nobody knew about John's plan ... everybody was surprised to hear the news.
- 13) Mark has finished his work ... can have a rest now.

### 2. Speak about yourself. Use 'and', 'but', 'so' and 'because'.



I'm very interested in ...  
because ...





### 3. Choose the correct verb form to read the story below.

- a) Steve lives in a small town called Newtown.  
He **(has lived / is living)** there for many years.  
Newtown is small now but it **(is growing / was growing)** quickly.  
Steve **(go / goes)** to the school near his house.  
He **(is liking / likes)** his school **(now / because)** he has many friends there and the teachers **(is / are)** helpful and friendly.
- b) Steve **(is having / has)** two brothers but they **(left / have left)** school already.  
One **(is called / calls)** Donald.  
He **(work / works)** in an office.  
Steve's **(another / different)** brother's name is Jack.  
He **(works / has worked)** in a shop when he first left school but he **(does not like / did not like)** the work and now he **(makes / made)** cars. **(Then / now)** he is very happy.  
He thinks the work is very **(enjoyed / enjoyable)**.
- c) Steve **(wants / is wanting)** to be a pilot when he leaves school but he **(can / has to)** work hard.  
Steve **is (getting / gets)** up every morning at 7 o'clock and **(catches / caught)** a bus at 7.30.  
School **(starts / start)** at 8 o'clock.  
Each lesson lasts **(for / since)** 40 minutes.  
Steve has one hour for lunch before afternoon lessons **(begin / have begun)**.  
He usually **(got / gets)** home from school **(at / in)** 4.30, but once he **(was / were)** very late.
- d) At 7 o'clock **(her / his)** mother **(phoned / has phoned)** the school.  
"Steve **(is / was)** not here," a teacher said.  
"He **(has gone / go)** home. He **(was leaving / has left)** here at 4.30."  
"Where can he be?" his mother **(said / was saying)** to his father.  
"**(Shall / will)** we tell the police?"  
"No," said **(Steve's / Steves')** father.  
He **(is pointing / pointed)** through the window. There was Steve.  
"Where have you **(been / went)**?" asked his mother.  
"The bus turned **(up / over)**," explained Steve.  
"Some people were hurt and I **(had to / must)** help them.  
I'm sorry I'm **(late / back)**."





## Lessons 9-10

1. Read the paragraphs from the foreigners' diaries. Which points of the descriptions do you agree or disagree with?

For most Ukrainians "pivden" (the South) is the Crimea, where they go on their vacations by the Black Sea on Summer Holidays. Though<sup>1</sup> lots of nationalities live in the Crimea, they haven't got enough international food cafes.

Ukrainians are not different from the other Europeans. They also like to travel, meet other people, enjoy life's pleasures and give their love to sports.

2. How do some foreigners view the Ukrainians?  
Make a list of some positive or negative stereotypes.  
Use the words: think, believe, say

3. Some English schoolchildren are on holidays in Ukraine. Look through the postcards they sent and guess where they could be. Complete their writings.



Hello, Ted!  
This is the place, where I am now. It's in Ukraine. Millions of people visit ... They enjoy ... Yesterday ... I'm going to spend a week in ...  
Bye!  
See you soon.  
Yours, George.



Hi, everybody!  
I'm lucky to be in this wonderful place. The food is excellent. I have ... and ... every day. They show us ... It's interesting to visit ... and learn about ...  
Kisses, Sam.



Dear Mum,  
The weather is nice in Ukraine in summer. We spent 3 days in ... Last week we went to ... Bobby liked ... Yesterday we visited ... It was fantastic!  
Love, Dave.

<sup>1</sup>though [ðəʊ] — хоча





**4. Role-play in pairs. You are a travel agent.  
A foreigner asks you for a piece of information.**

**A.** is a foreigner. He asks questions.

**B.** is a travel agent. He answers them giving advices and useful tips to remember.



**5. Role-play on the following situation in a group of four.**

*You are on a visit to one of the English-speaking countries. You visit a school there. You have a good opportunity to speak English. They ask you different questions. Work in a group of four.*

**A.** is a pupil from Ukraine. He/she answers questions.

**B., C., D.** are schoolchildren from a foreign country.

They ask questions about Ukraine and its people.

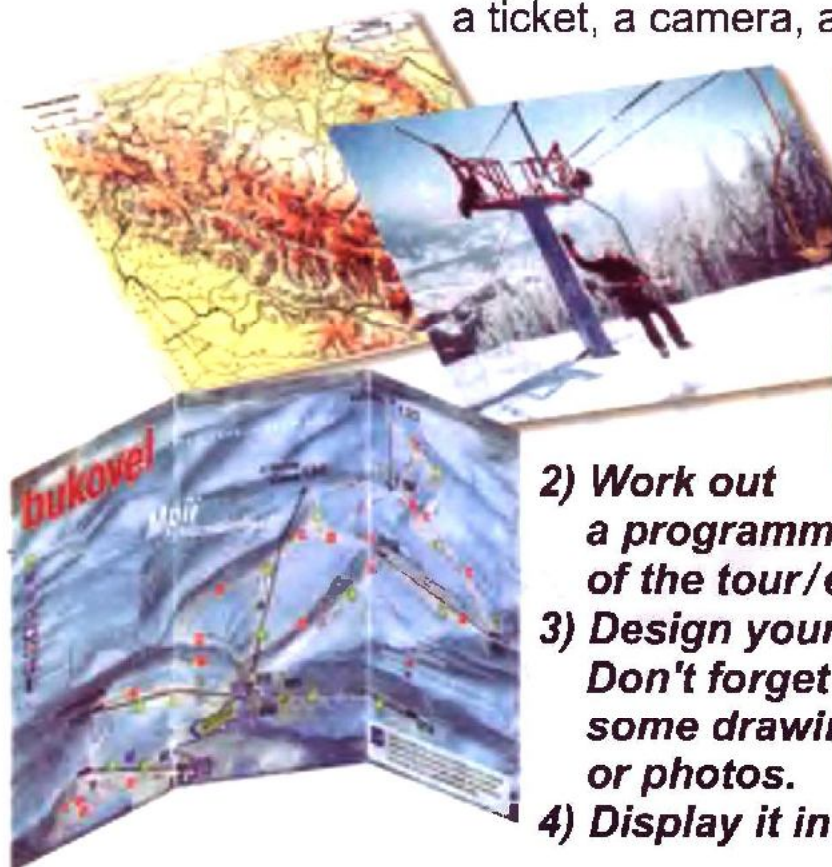


**WELCOME TO UKRAINE**

**1) Work in a group and discuss about:**

- the ways of travelling;
- holiday activities in Ukraine;
- places of interest;
- some useful tips about meals, shops, money, weather, etc.;
- things that are necessary to take.

**Use the words:** a visa, a travel guide, a map, a money-belt, a ticket, a camera, a passport, a first aid kit



- 2) Work out a programme of the tour/excursion.**
- 3) Design your leaflet. Don't forget about some drawings or photos.**
- 4) Display it in class.**



## Lessons 1-2



### 1. Listen and talk. Work in pairs.

**Chris:** Good morning. This is Chris speaking. Can I talk to John?

**John:** It's me, Christie. Why are you up so early?

**Chris:** I don't normally get up early on Sundays, but today is different. I woke up to the sound of birds' singing. It was like a big orchestra. When I looked out of the window I saw a bird. It was flying from a tree to tree and from a branch<sup>1</sup> to branch.

**John:** Oh, well, Christie... You are speaking like a poet. Everybody knows it's spring. The nature has just awakened<sup>2</sup> from the winter sleep.

**Chris:** You are right. But look at the sky! It has the shade<sup>3</sup> of blue, you can see only in summer, though<sup>4</sup> it is spring. What a lovely way to wake up in the morning!..

**John:** Yes, it is. We've got a lot of time to do something interesting today.

### 2. a) Answer the questions.

- 1) Why is Christie up so early?
- 2) Who woke her up?
- 3) What was the bird doing when she looked out of the window?
- 4) What is nature like in spring?
- 5) What unusual did Chris see in the sky?
- 6) Why is it a lovely day for John?

### b) Describe the morning in a way Christie sees it.

### 3. Have you ever done a "Nature Watch"<sup>5</sup>? Write notes about the different seasons.

**NATURE WATCH**

Spring starts March - flowers appear

Summer \_\_\_\_\_

Autumn \_\_\_\_\_

Winter \_\_\_\_\_



## REMEMBER!

wake (up) — woke (up) — **woken (up)** ['wəʊkən]

<sup>1</sup>a branch [brɑ:ntʃ] — гілка

<sup>2</sup>to awaken [ə'weɪk] — будити, прокидатися

<sup>3</sup>a shade [ʃeɪd] — відтінок

<sup>4</sup>though [ðəʊ] — хоч, адже

<sup>5</sup>спостереження за природою





#### 4. Listen and act out. Work in a group of four.

**Terry:** April 22 is soon.

**Lilly:** What about it?

**Terry:** Don't you know April 22 is Earth Day? People all over the world think about our planet.

**Chris:** They say our planet is in danger.

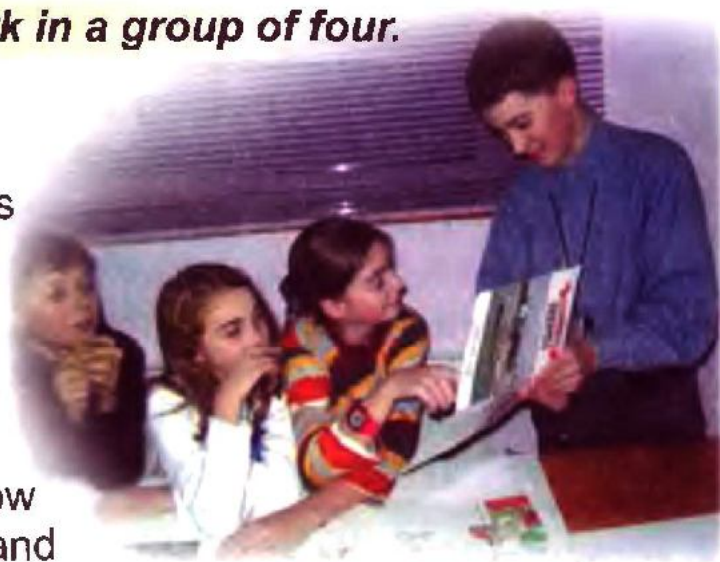
**Terry:** Many people don't know how to protect animals and plants, how to keep the waters clean and the air fresh. But they are ready to do it.

**John:** What way can we help nature?

**Lilly:** We can do it in our own way. We can do the next issue of the newspaper about the environment, for example.

**John:** Environment? What does this word mean?

**Chris:** Environment is everything that is around us: water and air, animals and plants ...



#### 5. Answer the questions.

1. When is Earth Day?
2. What does the word "environment" mean?
3. Why do people need to protect their environment?
4. Do people know how to protect animals and plants?
5. What are people ready to do?
6. What way are Lilly and her friends going to help to protect nature?

#### 6. Explain the following headings in newspapers.

**The Animal World is in Danger!**  
**Protect**  
**HELP the Environment!**  
**NATURE! THINK ABOUT**  
**THE PLANET!**



#### NEW VOCABULARY

- a danger** ['deɪndʒə]
- environment** [ɪn'vaɪrənmənt]
- a plant** [plɑ:nt]
- to protect** [prə'tekt]
- **to do smth in one's own way**
- **to be ready to do smth**
- **to keep smth clear**



**Homework** L1 WB ex.1 - p.74; L2 WB ex.1 - p.75



## Lesson 3

### 1. Open the brackets putting the verbs into correct forms. Ask questions as in the example.

**Example:** 1) Mary (to like) ... this kind of weather?

*Does Mary like this kind of weather?*

2) When nature always (to awaken) ... from its winter sleep?

3) What the weather (to be) ... like next week?

4) It (to rain) ... tomorrow?

5) The sun (to shine) ... yesterday afternoon?

### 2. Rewrite the sentences putting the verbs in the Simple Past Tense. Start them with the words in brackets.

1) Most birds go away to warmer countries every autumn. (Last month ...)

2) The light wind is blowing outside now. (Yesterday evening ...)

3) The rainbow is in the sky now. (Three hours ago ...)

4) The clouds look like white sheep. (Yesterday afternoon ...)

5) It is slippery. (Two days ago ...)

6) The snow lies on the branches of the trees. (Last week ...)

7) It rains every day. (Yesterday ...)

8) The weather is changeable this month. (Last month ...)

9) The sky is blue and cloudless today. (Yesterday morning ...)

### 3. Open the brackets and put the verbs into the correct forms.

a) The weather in April:

April showers (to bring) ... May flowers. The grass (to begin) ... to shoot. The trees (to burst) ... into leaf. The clouds (to look) ... like white sheep. The sky (to be) ... usually clear and cloudless. It (to get) ... warmer day by day.

b) The weather in May:

The temperature (to be) ... usually ten or fifteen above zero. But last week it (to be) ... five above zero. The sun often (to shine) ... brightly. It (to be) ... usually warm in the afternoon. There (to be) ... some clouds in the blue sky. They (to look) ... like cotton. The day (to be) ... warm yesterday. It may (to be) ... a shower soon. But the rain (to stop) ... quickly. It (to be) ... calm until the night.

### 4. a) Form the nouns from the following verbs:

to operate, to radiate, to cooperate, to create, to protect

### b) Form the adjectives with suffix '-less' from the following nouns:

hope, sleep, water, hair, penny, air, home





## REMEMBER!

### Verb + -tion = Noun

protect + **-tion** = protection

cooperate + **-tion** = cooperation

communicate + **-tion** = communication

### Adjective + -ly = Adverb

easy + **-ly** = easily

personal + **-ly** = personally

clear + **-ly** = clearly

### Adjective → Verb

clear → to clear

fresh → to fresh

### Noun + -less = Adjective

water + **-less** = waterless

air + **-less** = airless

## 5. Complete the sentences choosing words from the box.

protect, cooperate, cooperation, protection

- 1) We can't ... the animals around us very well.
- 2) John is working for the ... of animals in the area.
- 3) People all over the world should ... to save our world.
- 4) ... between countries on environmental problems will help our Planet.

## 6. Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

helpless, communication, waterless, protection, useless, easily, personally

- 1) The act of ... can be provided by different means: by phone, by mail, by the Internet and others.
- 2) Task number one for people is the ... of their environment.
- 3) The person who can't help himself is called ... .
- 4) ... deserts cannot be dangerous for camels.
- 5) I understood her ... without a word.
- 6) ... speaking, I don't like the idea.
- 7) This thing is of no use, in other words: it is ... .

## 6. Put the verbs into the right tense forms.

- 1) I (buy) ... a new bicycle last week.
- 2) The nature (wake up, just) ... and everything looks fresh.
- 3) I don't normally (get up) ... early.
- 4) We (do) ... a lot of work for today.



## Homework

WB ex.2 - p.76



## 1. Read and discuss in groups.

### OUR PLANET NEEDS HELP

Our Planet has taken care of us for thousands of years. We've got food, clothes, water, light, etc. But look at what we've done!

We have polluted many rivers, seas and lakes.

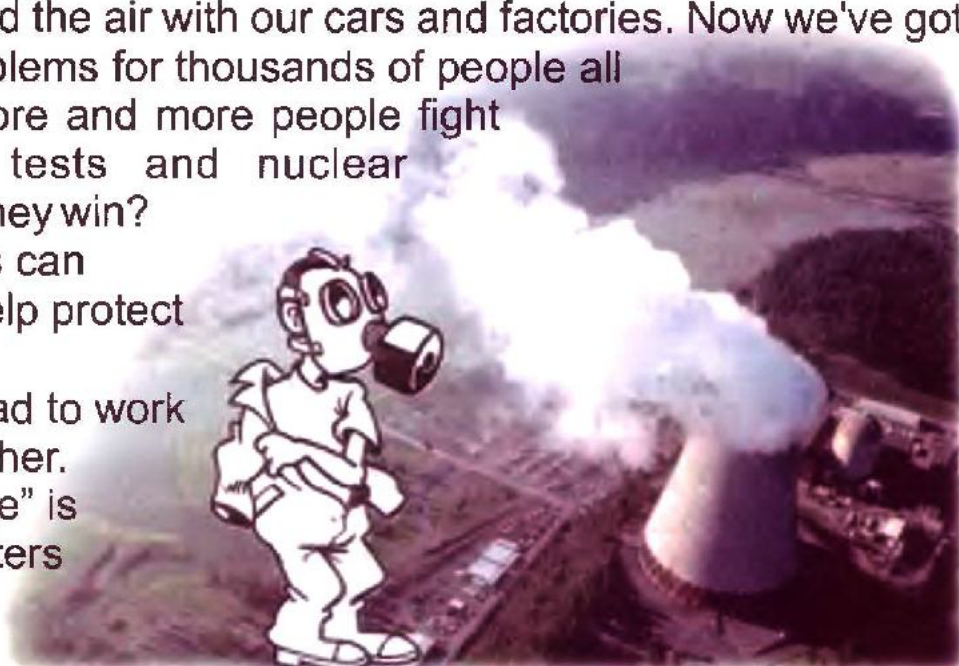
We have thrown rubbish from our cities into the oceans. This has killed millions of fish.

We have cut down thousands of trees, most of them in tropical rainforests. This has killed animals and plants, and they have disappeared forever<sup>1</sup>.

We have polluted the air with our cars and factories. Now we've got serious health problems for thousands of people all over the world! More and more people fight against nuclear tests and nuclear weapons. But will they win?

What each of us can personally do to help protect the environment?

We would be glad to work out the ideas together. The "English Bridge" is waiting for your letters with suggestions and advices!



## 2. Complete the sentences according to the text above.

- 1) Our Planet has given us ...
- 2) People have polluted ...
- 3) People have thrown ...
- 4) Water pollution has killed ...
- 5) People have cut down ...
- 6) Cutting down the trees has killed ...
- 7) People have polluted the air with ...
- 8) Now people have serious ...
- 9) More people fight against ...
- 10) Each of us has to do something to ...



### NEW VOCABULARY

a **factory** ['fæktəri]

**nuclear** | **weapon** ['wepən]  
[ˈnjuːkliə] | **test**

**pollution** [pəˈluːʃən]

a **rainforest** ['reɪn,fɒrɪst]

**rubbish** ['rʌbɪʃ]

**to cause** [kɔːz]

**to breathe** [briːð]

**to pollute** [pəˈluːt]

● **to take care (of)**

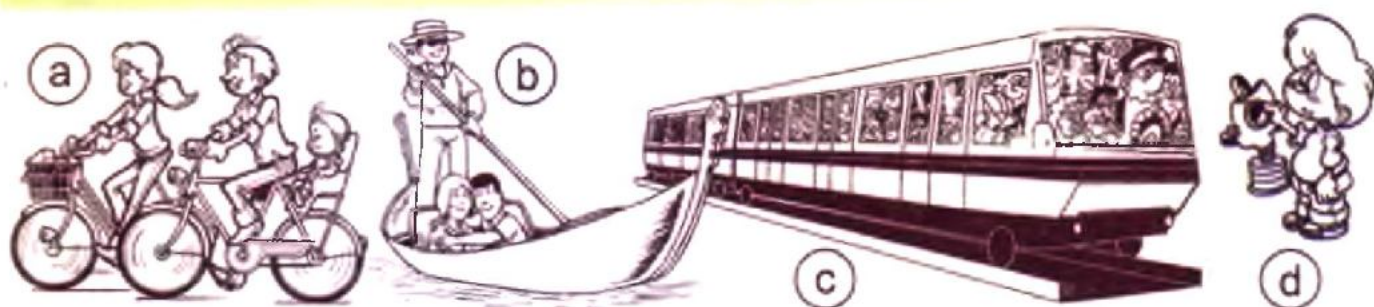
<sup>1</sup>forever [fəˈevə] — назавжди



### 3. Match according to the text.

to pollute	millions of fish
to kill	rubbish into oceans
to cut	down nature
to have	rivers and lakes
to help	animals and plants
to work	out trees in the forests
to take	care of nuclear tests and weapons
to throw	serious health problems
to fight against	the ideas and suggestions

### 4. Remember some information you have read about environmental problems. Here are some paragraphs from the articles. Read and match the pictures with them.



1. **Pollution Danger.** The problem with walking to school is that you have to breathe, and in many cities the air is not clean. In some cities the pollution caused by cars is very dangerous. People must wear masks in the street.
2. **On Your Bike!** Look at this man! He takes the best way of getting around a bike. It can be more dangerous but a lot of cities have special bicycle lanes. Going by bike does not cause any pollution and it is a good exercise for everyone.
3. **No Cars!** There are some cities with no cars. Venice is one of them. People get around on foot or by boat, by water buses or water taxis. It is not very fast but more romantic!
4. **Public Transport.** In many places public transport is overcrowded. In Tokyo there are special workers to push people into the underground trains. But there is not much pollution of air underground.

### 5. Discuss the pollution problems like rubbish in streets or polluted air and water in your city/town. Work in a group.



Homework

WB ex.2 - p.77



## Lesson 5

## 1. Read and learn what people can do about keeping environment safe.

Dear "English Bridge",

I agree that the problem of environment is a serious one. Trees are important natural resources. We should plant trees, we should not cut them down. We should turn the lights off when we leave the room. We should try to keep air clean. We can recycle paper and glass, plastic bottles and cans. We should use only the water we need.

I think reusing things we can help save our natural resources.

Peter.

Hello, "English Bridge",

I care about pollution.

Rubbish is a kind of it. It makes outdoors dirty and ugly. Rubbish can be harmful. I can give some advice:

- Don't litter. Throw rubbish in a rubbish can.
- Clean up after picnics and playing outside.
- Go on foot or ride a bicycle. It'll help to keep air clean.
- Feed animals and birds. They are a part of our environment.
- Don't forget that we are a part of nature, not separate from it.

Maria.

## 2. Say if it is true or false.

- 1) The environmental problem is serious enough.
- 2) Only trees are important natural resources.
- 3) We can use the water as much as we need.
- 4) You needn't turn the light off when you leave.
- 5) Rubbish makes outdoors dirty.
- 6) Rubbish cannot be harmful.



## NEW VOCABULARY

**electricity** [ɪˌlekˈtrɪsɪti]

**harmful** [ˈhɑːmfəl]

**natural resources**

[riːˈsɔːsɪz]

**to save** [seɪv]

**to recycle** [ˌriːˈsaɪkəl]

**to reuse** [ˌriːˈjuːz]

● **to do harm (good) to ...**

<sup>1</sup>separate ['sepəreɪt] — окремий



- 7) You needn't clean up after picnics: there are always workers who can do it for you.
- 8) Riding a bike helps to keep air clean.
- 9) Animals and birds are part of our environment.
- 10) People are separate from nature.

**4. Have you ever heard about a 'recycling drive'? Have you ever had it at school? Read and put the four sentences into the right places in the letter.**

- 1) Why don't you collect old clothes, too?
- 2) She works in a children's home.
- 3) I saw your notice about recycling.
- 4) I look forward to hearing from you.

*Dear Class B pupils,  
... I think a recycling drive is a good idea. But I have got another idea. ... When children's clothes are too small, they can bring them in to school. You can give them to my mother. ...*

*...  
Mary Johnson  
Class 5-A*

**5. Read the poster on the right, think and complete it for the recycling drive at school.**

**6. Write your own ideas how to save environment.**

### **WE ARE PUPILS FROM CLASS A PLEASE HELP US RECYCLE THINGS!**

- 1) Please save plastic bottles, cans and glass. Bring them to school and we will ... them for recycling.
- 2) Do you ... lot's of magazines and ...? When you have finished reading them, please give them to us. We try to recycle to save the forests.
- 3) Please save electricity and ... Always turn off the lights when you leave a room.

*Always remember  
to save water!*

**THANK YOU FOR  
COOPERATION!**



**Homework**

PB ex.6 - p.131

<sup>1</sup>recycling drive — збір вторинної сировини



## Lesson 6

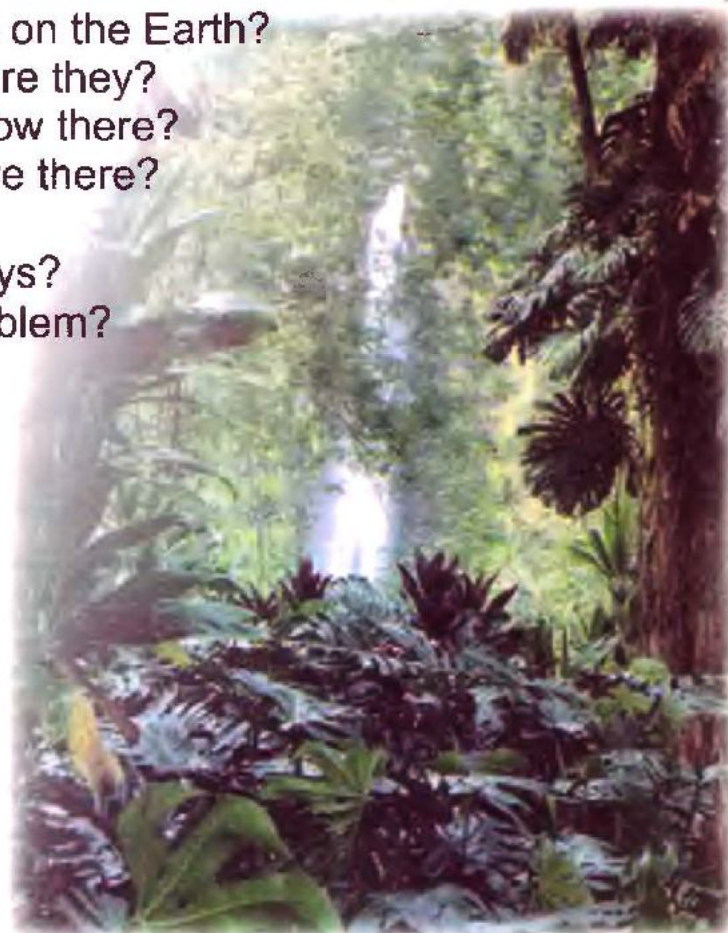
1. a) **Read and pronounce the words below.**  
**Find their meanings in a dictionary.**

rainforest ['reɪn,fɒrɪst], oxygen ['ɒksɪdʒən],  
 equator [ɪ'kweɪtə], rubber ['rʌbə], rare [reə]



- b) **Listen about rainforests and answer the questions.**

- 1) Where are rainforests on the Earth?
- 2) What kind of forests are they?
- 3) What useful things grow there?
- 4) How many animals live there?
- 5) What has happened to rainforests nowadays?
- 6) Is there any other problem?
- 7) What should we do?



### NEW VOCABULARY

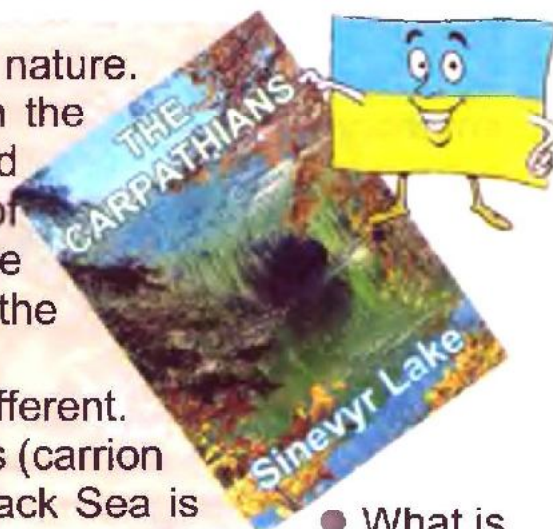
**extinct** [ɪk'stɪŋkt]  
**extinction** [ɪk'stɪŋkʃən]  
**wildlife** ['waɪldlaɪf]  
**to destroy** [dɪ'strɔɪ]  
**rare** [reə]

2. **Read the article and answer the question on the right.**

Ukraine is famous for its beautiful nature. There are many picturesque places in the Carpathians and Polissia. Hares and deer, wolves and foxes are a part of wildlife of these areas. There are more than 3,000 lakes with lots of fish (like the Shatsk lakes) in the north-west.

The animal world of the Crimea is different. Here we can find rare birds and animals (carrion eagle, black griffon, red deer). The Black Sea is deep. There are exotic types of fish and animals in it.

We can watch the wildlife of Ukraine in Nature Museums and Aquariums.



- What is wildlife in Ukraine like?



### 3. Read the descriptions and match them with the pictures.

- 1) This animal comes from the cat family. It lives in Asia. It's very fast and can jump and swim very well. It's got strong teeth and it kills other animals for food. This animal is in danger. People kill it for its beautiful fur.
- 2) This animal lives in the bamboo [ˌbæmˈbuː] forests in China. It walks on four legs and it can climb trees. It eats bamboo. Sadly, the bamboo forests are getting smaller and there isn't enough food for this animal.
- 3) This animal lives in warm waters. For example, in the Atlantic Ocean and the Mediterranean Sea. It swims 36 km an hour and jumps 3 meters out of water. This animal is in danger in some places because of pollution of the seas.



### 4. Complete the sentences according to the paragraphs above.

1. Tigers are in danger because ...
2. Pandas are in danger because ...
3. Dolphins are in danger because ...

### 5. Choose any rare animal and find out the information about it. Write a paragraph and tell about the animal in class.



### 6. Sing the song.

### THE FUTURE'S IN OUR HANDS

We want to see blue seas,  
We want to see green trees,  
We are defenders<sup>1</sup> of our land.  
We want to breath clean air,  
We want to show we care,  
We know the future's

in our hands.

We want to see birds fly,  
Up into a clear sky,  
We are defenders of our lands,  
We want to see flowers grow,  
To pollution we say, "No!"  
We know the future's

in our hands.



## Homework

PB ex.5 - p.133

<sup>1</sup>defender [diˈfendə] — защитник





## 1. Listen and read the story.

### CLEAN UP THE COUNTRYSIDE CLUB

after L. Black

Vicki has lived in the countryside for all her life. One day the weather was fine, and Vicki went to a little grove<sup>1</sup> in the forest — the place where she liked to play. But she was shocked to see the grove looked terrible: it was piled<sup>2</sup> with rubbish. Suddenly she had an idea: what about starting a "Clean Up the Countryside Club"?



She went home and phoned her four school friends. They agreed to meet at the grove. They worked hard and cleaned the grove from the rubbish. The forest looked beautiful again.

"We must watch for rubbish dumpers<sup>3</sup>," said Vicki the next day. Soon they noticed some. The picnickers left all their rubbish on the ground and were ready to go away. "Think about those bits of glass you have left and of all those Cola cans. Think about how ugly the place looks now," Vicki said. "The girl is right," one of the picnickers said and started cleaning the place. The children gave them black bags for rubbish to put into. Then they drove to the city. Vicki and her friends were glad.

Next morning their Science teacher spoke to the class about the importance of keeping the environment clean. He said that pollution was getting worse on the Earth. It could bring people to a great tragedy<sup>4</sup>. "But there is a hope," said the teacher. "People have already learnt some rules to protect the environment."



At the end of the lesson the teacher asked: "What each of you can personally do to help protect the environment?" Vicki told the class the yesterday's story. The teacher and the classmates praised<sup>5</sup> Vicki and her friends and decided to join the "Clean Up the Countryside Club".

<sup>1</sup>grove [grəʊv] — гай

<sup>2</sup>pile [paɪl] — купа

<sup>3</sup>dumper ['dʌmpə] — той, хто смітить

<sup>4</sup>tragedy ['trædʒɪdi] — трагедія

<sup>5</sup>to praise [preɪz] —

хвалити



## 2. Read and answer.

- 1) Where has Vicky lived for all her life?
- 2) Where did she like to play?
- 3) Why was she shocked one day?
- 4) What idea came to her head?
- 5) Did her friends agree?
- 6) What did Vicky say to the picnickers?
- 7) What did rubbish dumpers do then?
- 8) What did Vicky's teacher speak about the next morning?
- 9) What can pollution bring us to?
- 10) Is there any hope to save the planet?

## 3. Describe the grove before the girls removed away the mess and after it.

### BEFORE

bits of glass from bottles  
piles of rubbish  
paper and plastic bags  
broken branches  
to look dirty and ugly

### AFTER

clear and tidy  
to look wonderful again  
no rubbish under the trees and bushes  
a great place to live in  
a beautiful place to enjoy nature

## 4. Imagine you are Vicky. You are telling your story in class.

## 5. a) Read the rules that the "Clean Up the Countryside Club" group has worked out.

b) Do you think these rules can help?  
Which of them are the most important?  
What will you add?

## 6. Imagine that your friends and you decided to start a "Clean Up Our Town Club". What will you do? What's your plan?

### CLEAN UP THE COUNTRYSIDE CLUB RULES

- Walk or use a bicycle
- Don't throw the paper cans or bottles
- Recycle used materials
- Plant more trees
- Feed birds in winter
- Save electricity and gas
- Clear rubbish from lakes and rivers





## Lesson 8

### 1. Complete the sentences with 'so', 'because', 'and' or 'but'.

- 1) Many flowers and plants in the rainforests are important ... they have got some special things for medicine.
- 2) Many things are made of rubber ... rubber trees are important.
- 3) There were lots of pandas in China ... now they are disappearing.
- 4) We should save rainforests ... wildlife in them.
- 5) Oxygen is important for people ... you mustn't pollute the air.
- 6) Collect your plastic bottles ... recycle them.

### 2. Fill in the sentences with 'should' or 'shouldn't'.

- 1) They ... save rainforests.
- 2) We ... do any harm to wildlife.
- 3) Factories ... throw rubbish in the sea.
- 4) Schoolchildren ... have recycle drives every week.
- 5) Everyone ... protect the environment.
- 6) Farmers ... cut down the trees.

### 3. Choose and complete the sentences.

- 1) ... should waste water.  
a) nobody b) everybody c) somebody d) something
- 2) Farmers cut down rainforests ... they want to use the land.  
a) but b) because c) so d) and
- 3) A zebra ... a horse but it has strips.  
a) looks b) looks like c) likes d) look like
- 4) Children ... be polite to teachers.  
a) shouldn't b) are usually c) should d) often
- 5) ... tigers in this cage?  
a) is there b) was there c) there any d) are there any
- 6) ... ever thrown any rubbish in the street?  
a) you have b) have you c) you d) have
- 7) People have destroyed rainforests and many animals ... now.  
a) have disappeared b) disappeared  
c) will disappear d) are disappearing
- 8) Pandas need ... 600 bamboo canes every day.  
a) eating b) to eat c) eats d) ate
- 9) The water was so polluted that the fish ...  
a) dying b) has died c) died d) dies
- 10) The protection of the Earth ... many efforts (зусилля).  
a) is demanding b) demand c) demands d) demanded
- 11) I think, zoos perform a useful role and ... not be closed down.  
a) need b) may c) might d) should



**4. a) Read the text and fill in the prepositions from the box.**

without, on,  
under, in, through



Whales ([weɪlz] киты) are the biggest animals ... the sea. They are much bigger than any animal ... land. Whales live ... water, but they are not fish. They have warm blood ([blʌd] кровь), and they breathe air ... a hole in the top of their head. They can stay ... water for about an hour ... breathing.

**b) Put three questions to each sentence above.**

**5. Put questions to the answers.**

- ...?
- Yes, we are interested in the environment.
- ...?
- And we are interested in recycling.
- ...?
- Our name is Green Circle.
- ...?
- We organize recycling.
- ...?
- We are doing a recycling project in your area.
- ...?
- We want to put three large bins in your yard for old papers, cans and glass.
- ...?
- You can collect all these things for recycling.
- ...?
- We will empty your bins every week.
- ...?
- This will help you and help the environment.



**6. Choose the correct preposition and fill in the sentences below.**

in, with, on, to, down, at

- 1) People are usually good ... polluting the air with their cars.
- 2) People have done lots of harm ... a wildlife in the rainforests.
- 3) We can do it ... our own way.
- 4) Farmers cut ... many trees around.
- 5) The park was piled ... rubbish.
- 6) We are doing a project .. recycling things.



**Homework**

WB ex.2 - p.81



## Lessons 9-10

### 1. Fill in the sentences with the words from the boxes.

a) drinkable, important, dangerous, dirty

Water is very ... for life on the Earth. In many rivers and lakes water is very ... . In many places water is not ... . It is ... to use it when you cook.

b) disappear, protect, harm, factories, breathe, save, cut down

Some activities of people do a lot of ... to the forests. People ... trees to build homes and roads. Many animals ... . Many ... send a lot of smoke into air. It is difficult to ... in big cities. So, the problem now is to ... life on the Earth and to ... our planet for people.

c) save, rubber-tree, safe, rainforests, disappearing (2), medicines, destroyed

Many different kinds of animals live in ... . Rainforests are ... and the birds and animals are ..., too. People have got rubber from the ... . Many plants have got things for ... . Animals and plants were ... in the past. Farmers have ... rainforests. We should ... these places!

### 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) What environmental problems have we got today?
- 2) Do you think we should discuss these problems?
- 3) What do you feel about the rare plants and animals?
- 4) How can you personally take part in the protection of nature?

### 3. a) Read and match the sentences in column A with the ones in column B.

**A**

— We had Nature Studies yesterday. We discussed different environmental problems.

— I think many people understand they should protect the environment.

— That's true. And yet more and more people fight against nuclear tests, nuclear weapons and other things.

— Don't lose hope. Let's hope for the best.

**B**

— Do they really understand that? I'm not sure, because factories throw rubbish into rivers, and air pollution is getting worse.

— But will they win? And when will they win?

— No wonder. They are the most important problems nowadays.

### b) Act out the dialogue in pairs.



4. Working in a group name the animals are in danger you know. Find out which animals are in danger in Ukraine. Explain<sup>1</sup> why.

5. Read and match the sentences with the notes on the board. Find the extra note.

- 1) You mustn't throw away rubbish here.
- 2) You can join a club here.
- 3) You can recycle old magazines here.
- 4) You should help protect the rainforests.
- 5) You must save electricity.



6. Role-play. Work in a group of four. You are going to start up a recycling drive in your class. Discuss your plans.



## PROJECT



## WORK

### SAVE YOUR PLANET

- Step 1.** Work in pairs or groups. Make a list of practical ways how we can help the planet.
- Step 2.** Decide if you want to make a poster, a magazine or a radio programme (you will need a cassette recorder).
- Step 3.** Collect all the project material you have (photos, notes, pictures, posters, leaflets, etc).
- Step 4.** Select the best material. Check it and write a final draft.
- Step 5.** Display your programme in class.

<sup>1</sup>to explain [ɪksˈpleɪn] — пояснювати



## Lessons 1-2



### 1. Listen and act out. Work in a group of four.

**Chris:** I've come to say goodbye. I'm going to leave tomorrow morning.

**Lilly:** How long will you be away?

**Chris:** One month, I think.

**Terry:** Where are you going?

**Chris:** Mum is taking me to Spain.

**John:** You're lucky! I have never been to Spain. What are you going to do there?

**Chris:** My dad works there now. Mum has decided to join him and to take me with her.

**Lilly:** Have a good time, Chistie!

**Chris:** Thank you. I'm sorry I can't do the next issue of our newspaper.

**John:** Don't worry! We are going to meet in September again, aren't we?

**Chris:** Yes, we are. Bye, everyone!

**Terry:** Don't forget to send a postcard!



### 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) When is Chris going to leave?
- 2) How long will she be away?
- 3) Where is she going?
- 4) What is she going to do there?
- 5) Why is Chris sorry?
- 6) When are the friends going to meet again?
- 7) What does Chris have to send from Spain?



### REMEMBER!

bite — bit — **bit** [bit]  
 leave — left — **left** [left]  
 send — sent — **sent** [sent]

### 3. Ask and answer. Use the questions.



When are you going to leave for summer holidays?

How long will you be away?

Where are you going?

What are you going to do?

When are you going to meet your school friends again?



### NEW VOCABULARY

• **a mosquito** [mə'ski:təʊ]

• **to get a sunburn** ['sʌnbɜ:n]

• **to go camping**

• **to put up the tent**

• **to make a campfire**

• **to say goodbye** ['kæmp,faɪə]





#### 4. Listen and talk. Work in pairs or groups.

Terry: Well, my parents are going to spend summer at the sea...

Lilly: Why are you so sad about it?

Terry: I don't like the seaside at all. I think the best way of spending a holiday is living in tents in mountains.

John: We went camping in the Carpathians last year.

Lilly: Did you enjoy it?

John: Yes, I did. The weather was wonderful. My dad put up the tent near the river. We swam and played outside every day.

Terry: Did you cook?

John: No, I didn't. My mum made the meals.

Lilly: What did you do?

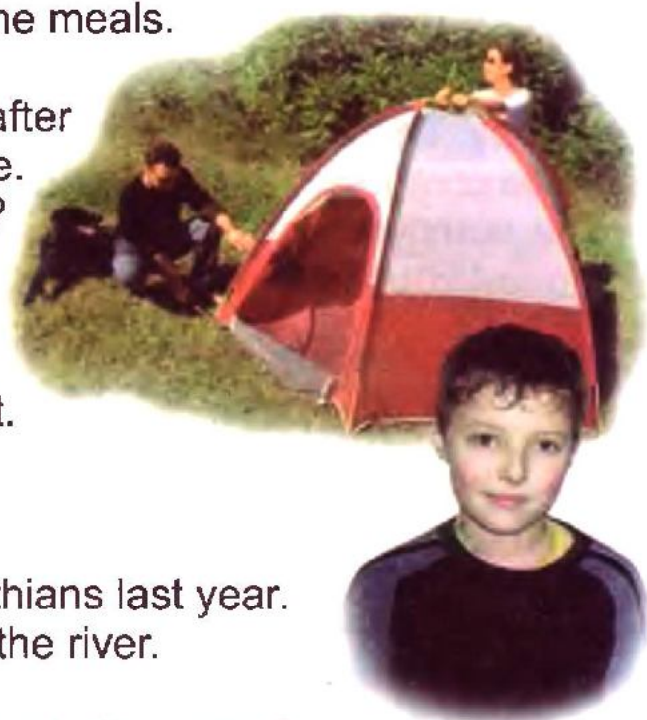
John: My cousin and I washed up after meals and made the campfire.

Terry: Did you have sleeping bags?

John: Yes, we did.

Lilly: Did you sleep well?

John: No, we didn't. The mosquitoes bit us every night.



#### 5. Say if it is true or false.

- 1) Terry doesn't like seaside at all.
- 2) Lilly went camping in the Carpathians last year.
- 3) John's dad put up the tent near the river.
- 4) John cooked meals.
- 5) John's mother washed up and made the campfire.
- 6) They didn't sleep in sleeping bags.
- 7) They didn't sleep well because the mosquitoes bit them every night.

#### 6. Ask and answer using the questions below.

Did you enjoy your holidays?  
Have mosquitoes ever bit you?  
What was the weather like?  
What did you do there?

gone to the seaside?  
travelled to the mountains?  
visited a foreign country?  
been to the Kid's Camp?  
made a campfire?  
got a sunburn?  
done camping?  
put up a tent?



Have you ever ...



**Homework**

WB ex.2 - p.85





## BRUSH UP!

I/you **will go** on holidays.  
 He/she/it **will go** on holidays.  
 We/you/they **will go**  
 on holidays.

**Will** you/she/they go  
 on holidays?  
 Yes, I/she/they **will**.  
 No, I/she/they **won't** [wəʊnt].

### 1. Put the verbs into the correct forms. Read about the holidays in the future.

A hundred years from now, holidays (be) ... different! Most people (have) ... very busy lives and they (not/have) ... time to go on a real holiday. There (be) ... special computers in every home. You (use) ... these computers to go on a virtual holidays! All you (need) ... is buttons. The computer (do) ... the rest! So easy! You (not/spend) ... a lot of money, you (not/need) ... a passport and you (not/get) ... a sunburn!

### 2. Read and compare.

#### shall / will

- It's hot in here.
- I'll open the window.  
 (раптове вирішення ситуації)
- I'll do my morning exercises every day on holidays.  
 (обіцянка)
- In a hundred years people **will** go to the moon on holidays. (передбачення)

#### going to

- Why have you bought so many vegetables?
- Because I'm **going to** make a salad. (попередній намір)
- I have put my PT suit on because I **am going to** do my exercises. (намір)
- I **am going to** buy a new computer next month. (намір)



## BRUSH UP!

I **am going to** make a campfire.  
 He/she/it **is going to** make a campfire.  
 We/you/they **are going to** make a campfire.

**Is** he/she/it

**Am** I

**Are** we/you/they

**going to** make a campfire?

Yes, **I am**.

Yes, he/she/it **is**.

Yes, we/you/they **are**.

No, **I am not**.

No, he/she/it **isn't**.

No, we/you/they **aren't**.



### 3. Read and say as in the example.



I'll make some meal.

No, I'm going to make meals today.



**Use the following:** bring glasses, make a cake, to the shop, feed a pet, change the song, put a tent

### 4. Read and remember.

#### DO or MAKE?

When we talk about an activity we say **DO**:

- do** exercises
- do** cooking (ironing, reading, shopping, etc.)
- do** homework
- do** well
- do** a translation
- do** smb good (harm, wrong)
- do** with smth
- do** a subject (Maths, etc)



When we talk about building, constructing or any activity with some result we use **MAKE**:

- make** a mistake
- make** dinner
- make** money
- make** a decision
- make** a noise
- make** a progress
- make** a fire
- make** a bed
- make** a choice
- make** a list
- make** a note

### 5. Fill in the sentences with 'do' or 'make' in the correct tense form.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>a) 1) — Who is going to ... the washing-up?</p> <p>2) She has ... a great progress in English.</p> <p>3) How much money does your father ... ?</p> <p>4) Why are the children ... such a noise?</p> <p>5) I don't like the way Mary ... her hair.</p> <p>6) Let's ... a cup of tea.</p> <p>7) We ... friends with Tom.</p> <p>8) Who ... the housework in your household?</p> <p>9) I'll ... a bed for you.</p> | <p>b) 1) Paul is busy. He is ... his homework.</p> <p>2) Eat more fruit; it will ... you good.</p> <p>3) The boys like to ... different kinds of model planes.</p> <p>4) Don't ... such a noise!</p> <p>5) There is no reason why you shouldn't ... so.</p> <p>6) ... the job quickly.</p> <p>7) Will you ... the best?</p> <p>8) The children decided to ... some bird houses.</p> |
|--|---|



## Homework

WB ex.2 - p.86



## 1. Read and discuss in groups.

Summer is coming! It is a happy time not only for schoolchildren. It is the time when grown-ups usually go on their vacations and have a rest from their jobs.

People spend their summer holidays in different ways. Some of them like living in tents, others enjoy comfort in hotels. Some like to go on camping and watching the nature around.

There are people who explore<sup>1</sup> far away countries and experience exciting journeys.

Travel agencies give leaflets with their programmes about the trips. There are magazines for travellers with interesting and useful information. We can learn about the place, its history and lifestyle of its people from the articles. They give us the idea about the places of interest we should visit, about the prices of food and clothing and many other things.

Everyone can make his or her own choice and enjoy the tour. When the holidays are over, people come back to their homes, meet their friends and share their impressions. They usually show photos, which they have taken, and display souvenirs, which they have bought.

Summer is over, work begins, but there will be another chance to have a wonderful summer time next year.



## 2. Say if it is true or false.

- 1) Summer is a happy time for grown-ups.
- 2) Nobody likes outdoor activities, everyone likes comfort in a hotel.
- 3) There are some people who enjoy just a calm place and watching the nature.
- 4) Travel agencies help to make a good choice.

<sup>1</sup>to explore [ɪk'splɔː] — досліджувати, вивчати



- 5) Magazines for travellers don't give enough information about the places.
- 6) People usually don't like to share their impressions about summer.
- 7) There is always a chance to spend more interesting summer holidays next year.

### 3. Complete the sentences according to the text above.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1) Summer is the time when grown-ups ...       | 9) We can learn ...                                       |
| 2) Some people like outdoor activities and ... | 10) Articles in such magazines give us the idea about ... |
| 3) There are people who enjoy comfort ...      | 11) Everyone can make ...                                 |
| 4) Some people prefer being just ...           | 12) We like to come back ...                              |
| 5) People like to explore ...                  | 13) We usually show ...                                   |
| 6) Who doesn't like to experience ...?         | 14) When summer is over ...                               |
| 7) Travel agencies give ...                    | 15) We believe that there will be ...                     |
| 8) There are magazines ...                     |   |



### NEW VOCABULARY

**an impression** [ɪm'preʃən]

**outdoor activities**

**to explore** [ɪk'splɔ:]

**to experience** [ɪk'spiəriəns]

**to prefer** [prɪ'fɜ:]

● **to have a rest**

● **to make a choice**

● **to share impressions**

● **to display souvenirs**

● **to go on** | **vacation**  
**holiday**

### 4. Match the words basing on the text.

to display	hotels
to have	a calm place
to go on	an exciting journey
to enjoy	souvenirs
to prefer	wonderful summer
to experience	a far away country
to explore	his own choice
to make	impressions
to share	camping

### 5. Answer the questions.

- 1) In what ways do people spend their summer holidays?
- 2) Does everyone like outdoor activities and living in tents?
- 3) Who helps to get useful information about where to go in summer?
- 4) What ideas do magazines for travellers give us?
- 5) What do people usually do when they come back home?
- 6) What way of spending summer do your family prefer?
- 7) What kind of holidays are you dreaming about?



**Homework**

WB ex.2 - p.87



## Lesson 5

### 1. Read and write to the 'English Bridge' about your ideal summer holidays.

DELETE PRINT FORWA

**From:** Freda Lee  
**To:** English Bridge  
**Subject:** Summer Holidays

Last summer I had a great time in India. I've done some really exciting things! One day we went hiking in the mountains. It was fantastic. The other day we visited a local market and bought a lot of souvenirs. Once we went scuba diving. My brother did some underwater photos. It was exciting!

DELETE PRINT FORWARD REPLY DONE

**From:** Peter Roberts  
**To:** English Bridge  
**Subject:** Summer Holidays

I live at the seaside, so I always have to stay here in summer and help my mum. She works in a cafe. Summer is the time when she is very busy. But last holiday I went hiking with my friend. We took rucksacks and we had walking boots. We had a compass and a map. So we always knew the way. It was a great holiday. But one night we decided to stay in the hills. We put on a tent but then it started to rain! We didn't enjoy that night.

**From:** Karla Kuskina  
**To:** English Bridge  
**Subject:** Summer Holidays

Summer is coming and everyone is going to go to the sea. I don't like seaside holidays. I prefer country holidays. You can go for long walks or go cycling. If you want to swim, there's always a river or a swimming pool. You can also go to the forest or visit some other interesting places.



### NEW VOCABULARY

**a rucksack** ['rʌksæk]

**rock climbing** ['klaɪmɪŋ]

**mountain biking** ['maʊntɪn'baɪkɪŋ]

**underwater**

**photography**

● **to go cycling** ['saɪklɪŋ]

● **to go scuba diving** ['sku:bə,daɪvɪŋ]

● **to go hiking** ['haɪkɪŋ]

### 2. Choose and complete the sentences according to the letters above.

1) Freda has a great time in ...


a) the countryside b) India c) at the seaside

2) She went ... a) to the forest b) hiking c) cycling



- 3) Karla doesn't like ...  
a) seaside holidays b) walking c) rock climbing
- 4) She prefers ...  
a) scuba diving b) getting sunburnt c) country holidays
- 5) Peter always has to ...  
a) do mountain biking b) stay at home in  
c) take a rucksack and summer walking boots
- 6) Peter has never ...  
a) travelled to India b) been at the seaside c) lived in a tent

**3. Ask and answer. Work in pairs.**




a



b



c



d



e



f




g



I'll go swimming.  
What about you?

I think I'll ...



**4. Work in pairs. Talk with each other as in the example.**



We're going to  
take a camera.

Oh, good! We'll be  
able to take photos!



**Use:**

a rucksack  
a boat  
some bikes  
a swimming suit  
a tent  
a compass  
a map

**5. You are going to have a holiday for  
a week. Write a programme for each day.**



**Homework**

WB ex.2 - p.88

Word Bank



## Lesson 6

### 1. a) Find out the meanings of the following words in a dictionary:

aborigine [ˌæbəˈrɪdʒɪni]  
 to hunt [hʌnt]  
 a boomerang [ˈbuːməɾæŋ]  
 surfing [ˈsɜːfɪŋ]  
 a shark [ʃɑːk]  
 a beach [biːtʃ]  
 an attraction  
     [əˈtrækʃən]  
 Ayers Rock [ˌeɪzˈrɒk]  
 Great Barrier Reef  
     [ˌɡreɪtˌbæriːəˈriːf]



### b) Before listening try to remember what you have already known about Australia.



### c) Listen and answer the questions.

- 1) Who were the native people in Australia?
- 2) Did they live in one place? Why?
- 3) What was after 1950?
- 4) What is the official language in Australia now?
- 5) Why are most of the big towns at the seaside?
- 6) What do many Australians enjoy?
- 7) Why do they have to be careful?
- 8) Why is Australia very popular with tourists?
- 9) What are the two very popular attractions in Australia?
- 10) What interesting animals live in Australia?
- 11) Is there any problem for tourists in Australia?



### 2. Listen about Australia again and complete the sentences.

- 1) Many Australians enjoy ...
- 2) Be careful  
because  
sometimes ...
- 3) There is a lot ...
- 4) You can visit ...  
or go on ...
- 5) Ayers Rock is ...
- 6) Great Barrier  
Reef is ...







**3. Role-play. Your friend and you are going on summer holidays to Australia. Talk about your plans for summer holidays. Work in pairs.**

- Decide where you want to go and what you want to see.
- Make suggestions and choose the best ideas.

**4. Fill in the letter with the words from the box on the left.**

underwater  
photos,  
Zoo,  
exciting,  
tent,  
scuba-  
diving, stay,  
mountain  
biking

Dear Liz,

We are having a great time here in New Zealand! We've done some really ... things. Yesterday we went ... it was fantastic! Charlie took ...

They are wonderful. Today we are going to look at the animals in the ...

Tomorrow we're going to take our ... so we can ... for a night in the mountains. On Friday we're going to go ... I say goodbye for now.

Yours, Tom.

**5. Imagine you are in Australia now.**

**Write a postcard. Use the questions.**

- Who are you with?
- Are you having a lovely time?
- Is the weather good or bad?
- What have you done interesting for the last week?
- What did you do yesterday?
- What are you doing now?
- What are you going to do?

**6. Write a paragraph about what tourists can see or do in Ukraine.**



**7. Listen and learn the poem.**

Do you hear  
the bugle<sup>1</sup> cry?

Do you see the  
deep blue sky?

We get up and  
laugh and shout:

"Camping out! Camping out!"

**SUMMER  
HOLIDAYS**



Camping means  
a lot of pleasure;  
Healthy work  
and healthy leisure;  
Boating, swimming,  
games and walks,  
And around the fire talks.



**Homework**

WB ex.1 - p.88

<sup>1</sup>a bugle ['bju:gl] — трыба, сурма





## 1. Listen and read the story.

### HOLIDAYS

"Where are you going to spend your holidays?" Myshko asked his friends when they were on their way home from school.

"I don't know," Victor said, "my father and mother have not decided yet. This evening we are going to speak about it."

"But I know," Lora said, "we usually spend our holidays at the seaside. We enjoy holidays at the Black Sea, we like to swim and sunburn, and go on all kinds of interesting excursions."

"We also go to the seaside in summer," Vira said, "but this year my parents decided to spend our holidays in Kyiv."

"Oh, it's wonderful! You'll see all the interesting places, exhibitions, museums, parks and theatres there," Myshko said. "We were in Kyiv last summer, and we had a very good time there."

"And where are you going to spend your holidays this summer, Misha?" Vira asked.

"I'll stay in town for a month and then I'll go to my uncle. He lives in a small village of Polissia."



"Why don't you ask me about my plans for the holidays?" Serhiy asked.

"Tell us, please!" all of them said at once.

"I have a cousin, who lives in Lviv. She is coming to stay with us this summer."

"Then it's very good. Let's

## 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) What are the children speaking about?
- 2) Where does Lora spend her summer holidays?
- 3) Where is Myshko going to spend his summertime?
- 4) Is Serhiy going to go on a trip?
- 5) Who is going to go to Kyiv?
- 6) What did Lora say suddenly? Why?
- 7) What does Myshko think about the girl's poem? What do you think?



spend our time together. You and me, and our cousins," Myshko said.

"A very good idea!" Serhiy said. "I like it very much. We'll go on excursions together. We'll play games, swim in the river, and go for walks in the woods. I think my parents will let us live in tents near the river."

"I don't want to go to the Black Sea now," Lora said suddenly. "I want to stay here and spend my holidays with you. It's so nice to live in a tent near a river."

"But it's nice to live at a seaside, too!" Serhiy said.

"I'll write to you from Kyiv," Vira said. "I am so glad I am going to Kyiv. I want to see everything and I want to go everywhere."

"But you can't be everywhere and see everything at once," Victor said.

"Certainly not. I know it. But I have a lot of plans, and summer holidays are so short.

When I'm at school,  
The holidays seem far away,  
And I think up all sorts of ways  
To make time fly away:  
What I'll do,  
And where I'll go,  
And who I'll see.  
Then the holidays  
come around,

And I've found  
That I want the time  
to slow down.  
But does it? No.  
It won't go slow,  
Quickly it will go.  
And before I know  
where I am,  
I'm back at school again."

"Oh, you speak like a poet, Vira."

"You know I like poems, and I try to write poems, but I can't."

"Yes, you can. This poem is very good."

"Don't laugh at me, Myshko."

"I don't," he said. "You know I always tell the truth. I'm an honest critic."

**3. Points for a discussion. Work in a group.**

- The popular places for the Ukrainians to spend summertime.
- The way (transport) your family usually travel in summer .
- The worst (best) summer you have ever had.
- Your plans for your summer holidays this year.



# Homework

WB ex.2 - p.90



## Lesson 8

### 1. Put the verbs into the correct forms to complete the letter.

Dear Amy,

We (to be) ... in Florida since Saturday. Our villa (to be) ... lovely. We (to have) ... our own swimming pool. I just (to come) ... out of the water. I (sit) ... near the pool now and (to write) ... this letter.

On Sunday we (to go) ... to Sea World. We (to go) ... to the whale show in the afternoon and in the evening, too. The next day we (to go) ... to Typhoon Lagoon. It (to be) ... an amazing water park. There (to be) ... lots of water slides. In the evening we (to have) ... a good dinner. The food (to be) ... excellent! Tomorrow we (to be going to) ... the Kennedy Space Centre!

See you soon!

Love,

Jess.

### 2. Choose the correct verb form.

1) My dad's got a new job in London.

We ('ll / 're going to) move there in July.

2) We ('ll / are going to) visit France next month.

Mum's already bought the tickets.

3) — It's cold in here!

— I ('ll / am going to) close the window.

4) They booked their summer holiday last week.

They ('ll / are going to) stay with their uncle.

5) — It's a secret.

— OK. I (won't / am not going to) tell anyone

6) — Would you like cola or orange juice?

— I ('ll / am going to) have cola, please.

### 3. Complete the words with 'thing', 'body' or 'where' to read the story.

a) Our class went on a boat trip, and some... dropped his picnic lunch in the river. It was my friend Janos. "Has any... got any extra lunch?" asked the teacher. I gave Janos some... from my own lunch box.

We also visited the beautiful old town up on the hill. The teacher said, "Follow me. I don't want any... to get lost!" But Janos wasn't listening and he got lost some... near the church. No... saw him for about ten minutes, but luckily we found him again!

It was a wonderful day out, and no... will forget it!



b) Last week we went on a school trip to Budapest. Every... was very excited. Some children hadn't been any... on a school trip before. We all got on the bus at 8 o'clock. The teacher said, "You should all have a picnic lunch, a drink and a waterproof jacket. You should have a rucksack to carry every... . I hope you haven't forgotten any... !"

Then I remembered I had left some... at home my jacket! Luckily it was a warm day. Of course, every... knows that Budapest is really two cities, Buda and Pest. If you want to go some... really special, then this is a great place to visit. There is no... better than a trip down the Danube on one of the famous riverboats.

**4. a) Read the letter and answer the questions below.**

Dear Mary,

We're having a great time here in Australia! We've done some really exciting things! Yesterday we went shopping in Brisbane it was fantastic! We bought a lot of things!

Today, we are going to go to Sea World and look at the dolphins. We'll take our cameras so we can take lots of photos. On Thursday, we are going to visit Brisbane Forest Park. We'll go on the "Night Wildlife Tour" and take a journey through the rainforest! I can't wait. It sounds really exciting!

See you soon,  
John.



- 1) Who's writing a letter?
- 2) Where did they go shopping yesterday?
- 3) What are they going to do today?
- 4) What will they do at Brisbane Forest Park?



**b) Determine the tense forms of the verbs used in the letter above. Write out them according to the table below.**

Present			Past		Future	
Perfect	Simple	Continuos	Simple	Continuos	Simple	Continuos



**Homework**

WB ex.2 - p.91



## Lessons 9-10

1. You are on holiday in another country. Write a letter to a friend.
2. Read and complete with the words from the box.

natural, exciting, interesting, a rest, camera, ride, programme, sights, shopping, beautiful, flight, enjoy

# EXPLORE INDIA!

AN ... HOLIDAY THAT TAKES YOU FROM  
THE BUSY STREETS OF DELHI TO THE ... BEAUTY!  
ON YOUR EXPLORE INDIA TOUR, YOU WILL SEE  
AND DO LOTS OF ... THINGS. HERE IS YOUR 7 DAY ...:

Day 1  
and 2



You will have these days to  
have ... and see the ... of old  
Delhi. You can do some ...

Day 3



You will travel to see the ...  
Taj Mahal. Don't forget your...!

Day 4



You will go to Jaipur and see  
the colourful palaces there.

Day 5  
and 6



You will spend these days at Corbett  
National Park. You can ... an elephant  
and see tigers and other animals.

Day 7

You'll come  
back to Delhi,  
ready for your  
... back home.

WE'RE SURE YOU  
WILL REALLY ... YOUR  
WEEK IN INDIA!



3. What can people see and do in Ukraine? Write a seven-day holiday programme for people who want to visit our country.

4. Make a poster about summer in Ukraine. Work in a group.

1) Think about these things.

- What is the weather like?
- What things do people do?
- Are there special events?
- How do people spend their holidays?

2) Write about the things. Illustrate your text with pictures.



5. Role-play. Imagine you are at the Travel Agency.

A. You've made your choice and would like to know more about the programme and place you have chosen.

B. is a Travel Agency officer. He gives suggestions, information and answers A.'s questions.



### MY IDEAL PLACE FOR A HOLIDAY

What is your ideal place for a holiday?  
It can be a real or an imaginary place.

**Step 1.** Draw a map of your place.

**Step 2.** Label the buildings and other things.

**Step 3.** Write a leaflet about the place.

Say what you can do there.

**Step 4.** Illustrate your leaflet with some pictures.

**Step 5.** Write a postcard from there to someone you know.

**Step 6.** Present your project in class.



Stay in one of the finest hotels at the Mediterranean Sea. Everyone speaks English here. You can go on safari to one of the national parks.



Dear Carol and Peter,  
Greece is great!  
The beaches are beautiful. At the moment I'm getting a sunburn. The food is excellent. The people are friendly.  
Bye.  
Love,  
Mary and Jim.

Carol  
& Peter  
Long

42 Walton St.  
Cambridge  
CA 7 313T  
England





## THE ANT AND THE GRASSHOPPER

Once upon a time there was a grasshopper who played the violin. Like all grasshoppers, he loved the summer. He did not work at all but when the sun was hot, he played his violin and sang and danced all day.

An ant lived near the grasshopper. She was very different from her neighbour. Did she like music and singing and dancing? No, she did not.

The ant worked hard. She worked from morning until night. She picked up food and carried it to her house in the anthill.

The grasshopper laughed at her. "You've been working hard for days and days. Why don't you sing and dance like me?" he said. "The sun is hot. The sky is blue. It's summer. Don't work so hard."

But the ant said, "After summer comes autumn, and after autumn comes winter. I must work. You must work."

The grasshopper did not listen to the ant. He laughed and started to sing and play and dance again. The hot summer passed slowly and then it was autumn. The weather was colder but the grasshopper still played his violin and sang and danced.

The winter arrived. The grasshopper stopped playing his violin. It began to snow. The grasshopper was cold and he was very hungry, too.



Then he remembered the ant and all the food in the anthill. He walked through the snow. He arrived at the ant's house and knocked on the door.

"Please, please," said the grasshopper, "can I come in? I am so cold and hungry. I have nothing to eat."

But the ant said, "I worked hard through the summer. You didn't. You played your violin and sang and danced. You laughed at me in the summer. Well, now it is winter. Tell me, who is laughing now?"



She closed her door and the grasshopper walked slowly away through the snow to look for a kinder friend.

## PAUL'S FRENCH LESSON

The door opened and my friend Paul came in. "Hello!" he said. "I've just come back from my holiday, and I've learned to speak French!" We were all glad to see him but I felt ashamed that I had wasted my holiday playing ball.

"Now Paul will be able to write to French schoolchildren, and read French books," I thought.

"There, Dennis!" said Mother. "You could also spend some time studying during the holidays!"

And Daddy exclaimed, "Good for you, Paul! That's what I like to hear!"

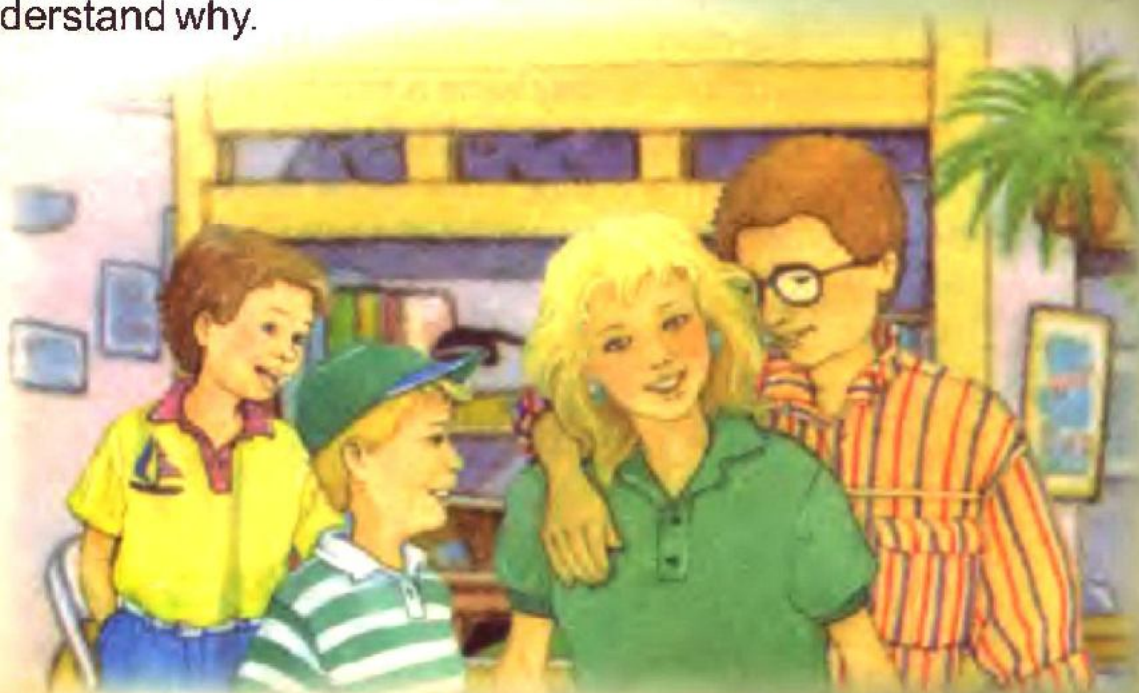
Very much the hero, Paul said, "A student named Jack spent the summer with me. He taught me every day. I studied so hard that I even lost about a pound in weight."

"Why don't you make use of your new language," asked Mother. "Tell me how to say 'Hello' in French."

"I haven't learnt that yet," Paul said. "Will you teach me to count in French?" I asked hopefully.

"I haven't learned that yet," repeated Paul. "Then what did you learn," Daddy asked. "I learned to say 'Jack' in French. It's 'Jacque'. But that's all I know so far."

Mummy and Daddy started laughing, and Paul couldn't understand why.





## SPORTS DAY

Most schools in England have a sports day once a year, in the late spring or the summer. As my school is in London, in a place with no playing-field, we go to a special running track which belongs to the London County Council.

The sports day is looked forward to by the whole school. On that day we have no lessons. We look at the sky every day for a week beforehand, hoping that it will be fine; even if we cannot have a real sunny day, at least we don't want any rain.

We go to school on the day itself, the sky is blue with no clouds, but we take a mackintosh with us in case; we also take a packed lunch. Outside the school is a fleet of buses to take us to the field. It is half an hour's ride.

When we arrive, all the competitors change into their sports clothes, shorts and shirts or vests, and the spectators find places on the sloping banks round the track, ready to cheer up their teams. The running track is circular and inside it there are places for the high jump, the long jump, throwing the discus and the hurdles races. All these events take place at the same time as the running, so there is plenty to watch. There is a large blackboard on which the results are chalked up for all to see, and as the day goes on it is possible to see which team is ahead or has the best chance of winning.

Our school is divided into six teams, or, as we call them 'houses'; each 'house' has a different colour and the competitors wear the colour of their 'house'. The 'house' with the most points at the end of the day wins a trophy, either a shield or a cup. There are many races; a hundred yards is the shortest. A yard is a little less than a metre. The other distances are 220 yards and 440 yards. This is a quarter of a mile.





## THE USA

The United States of America is the fourth largest country in the world. It is bigger than the whole of Europe. There are five time zones in the USA. So, when it's twelve o'clock in New York, it's only eight o'clock in Alaska. The third longest river in the world is in the USA. It's the Mississippi-Missouri River.

The USA is the richest country in the world. It produces more food, iron, cars, aeroplanes, books, films, music and TV programmes than any other country in the world.

The USA has a population of about 260 million people. Most of them live in cities. The largest city in the USA is New York. About 8 million people live there. The second largest city is Los Angeles in California and the third largest is Chicago.

There are fifty states in the United States. Some of the eastern states, like Rhode Island and Delaware, are quite small, but others, like Texas, California and Alaska, are bigger than a lot of countries. Each state has got its own government and its own capital city. There is a federal capital for the whole of the USA in Washington DC. The US President lives there, in the White House.

The flag of the USA is called 'The Stars and Stripes'. There is one star for each of the fifty states. The thirteen stripes are for the original thirteen states that formed the USA in 1776, when they got their independence from Britain.

The first settlers in the USA came from Britain, but now the USA has people from all over the world — from Europe, Asia, Africa and South America.





## A TYPICAL YEAR IN BRITAIN

### SCHOOL HOLIDAYS

The school year starts at the beginning of September.

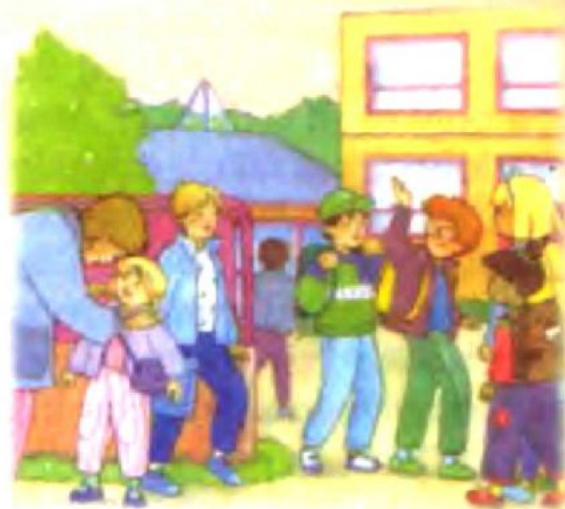
There are three terms in the school year:

- the Autumn term — from September to Christmas;
- the Spring term — from New Year to Easter;
- the Summer term — from Easter to the middle of July.

There are three main holidays:

- the Christmas holidays — two weeks;
- the Easter holidays — two weeks;
- the summer holidays — six weeks.

There's also a one-week holiday in the middle of each term. We call these 'half-term' holidays.



### BIRTHDAYS

On your birthday you get cards and presents from members of your family and your friends. Some people have a birthday party for their friends. There's usually a birthday cake with one candle for each year of your age. The person with the birthday blows out the candles and makes a wish. You can have a party in your own home, but nowadays a lot of people have their party in a restaurant.

Some older children don't have a party. They take some of their friends to the cinema, to a bowling alley or somewhere like that. Birthdays are very important in Britain. We don't have 'name days'.

### FESTIVALS

Christmas is the biggest festival of the year. Families usually come together to celebrate it. People put up decorations and decorate a Christmas tree. On Christmas Day (25 December) there is a traditional meal of turkey with vegetables, followed by Christmas pudding. On Boxing Day (26 December) they open their Christmas presents.





At New Year a lot of people have a party to 'see the new year in'. At midnight they join hands and sing 'Auld Land Syne'. In Scotland, New Year is a more important festival than Christmas.

We also celebrate Easter in Britain, but it's not a very important festival for most people. People give children chocolate Easter eggs, and some people go to church.



## THE STORY OF ROBINSON CRUSOE

Robinson Crusoe was travelling on a big sailing ship. There was a terrible storm. He was the only person who did not drown.

Robinson found some useful things on the ship: some food and some clothes, some carpenter's tools and two guns.

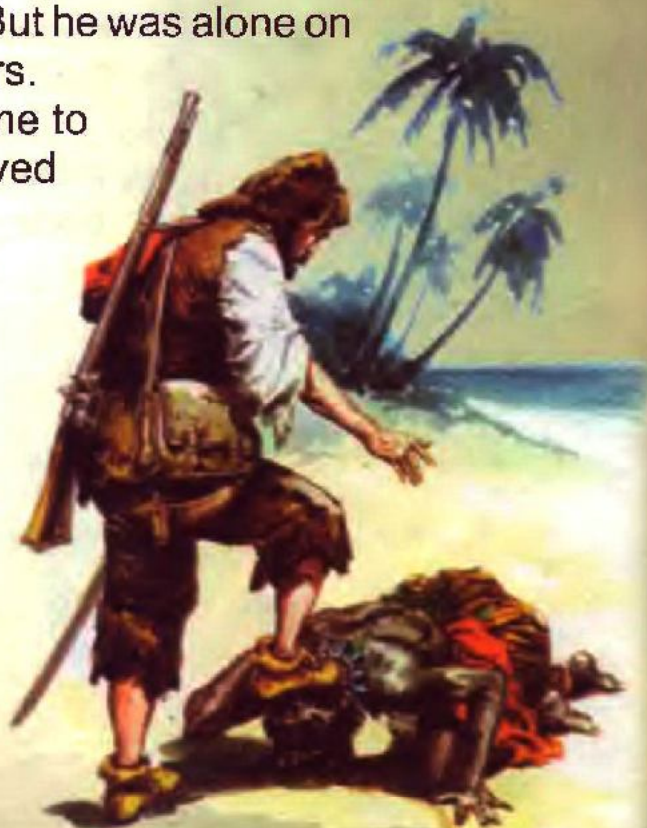
Robinson reached an island with his things. The island was beautiful but no one lived there.

Robinson was alone. He watched as the ship sank.

Robinson cut down trees and built a small house. He found animals and fruit to eat. He found some goats on the island and started a small farm. He had a parrot, which he used to talk to. He learned how to cook and make clothes. He grew corn and learned how to make bread. But he was alone on the island for twenty-four years.

Then, one day, a man came to the island, and Robinson saved his life. He called this man Friday because that was the day when he found him. Robinson taught Friday to speak English, and Friday helped Robinson on the farm.

Finally, after twenty-eight years, Robinson was rescued by a passing ship. He returned to England and Friday went with him. They were friends for the rest of their lives.





## THE ARCTIC

The Arctic is the land and sea at the top of the world. Look in the sky at night and you can see these stars, the Bear. The Greek word *arktos* means 'bear' and the Arctic is under the Bear.

In winter the Arctic is very cold and dark, because the sun does not go down at night.

It is very, very cold in the Arctic winter. When you cry, the tears freeze on your face. When you throw water in the air, it freezes.

The Inuit people live in the Arctic. They use sledges and dogs. In the Inuit language, there are twenty-six words for 'snow'. How many words are there in your language for 'snow'?

Arctic animals have a difficult life. In winter there is ice and snow everywhere. Some animals, like polar bears, have very thick fur. This keeps them warm.

Some animals change colour in the winter. The fox and the hare turn white. Other animals cannot see them in the snow.

There is very little food. Some animals — the reindeer and the birds — move to warmer places.





## ANIMALS IN DANGER

These animals are extinct. They lived in the old days, but there are no mammoths, no dodos and no quaggas today. Hunters killed them all. Many animals today are in danger. We must help them or they are going to be extinct, too.

Some animals are in danger because people hunt them. People kill wild cats, snakes and crocodiles because they want their skins.

Some animals are in danger because people catch them and sell them for pets.

Some animals are in danger because people are cutting down trees and destroying their homes. Some countries now have National Parks. Scientists sometimes move animals to these parks. The animals are safe, because people can't cut down the trees or kill the animals.

In New Zealand scientists saved the black robin. There were only four male black robins and one female in the world. The female's name was 'Old Blue'. When she laid eggs, the scientists gave the eggs to other birds. These birds looked after the baby robins. 'Old Blue' saw her empty nest and she laid more eggs. Now there are more than sixty black robins.

A lot of groups work to save the animals. You can join the World Wide Fund for Nature or Friends of the Earth. You can help too!



**The mammoths**



**The dodos**



**The quaggas**





# GRAMMAR REFERENCE

## 1. The Noun (іменник)

### COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

(Зчислювані та незчислювані іменники)

	COUNTABLE	UNCOUNTABLE
<b>Meaning</b> (Значення)	<b>objects:</b> flower, key, knife, man, fox, etc.	<b>food:</b> butter, bread, milk, tea, etc. <b>material:</b> wood, iron; petrol, water, snow, metal, etc. <b>abstract nouns:</b> peace, anger, love <b>some others:</b> money, soap, furniture, news, information, etc.
<b>Plural</b> (Множина)	have plural forms (see the rules) (має форми множини)	have no plural forms (used mainly in the singular) (не має форми множини)
<b>Article</b> (Артикль)	take articles: <b>a/an, the</b> (вживається з означеним та неозначеним артиклями)	<b>have no article a/an</b> sometimes the
<b>Quantity Words</b> (Слова із значенням якості)	<b>many (a lot of)</b> <b>some</b> <b>few (a few)</b>	<b>much (a lot of)</b> <b>some</b> <b>little (a little)</b>

### THE PLURAL OF NOUNS

1. + <b>-s</b>	dog — dogs [ <b>z</b> ] rose — roses [ <b>lɪz</b> ]	cat — cats [ <b>s</b> ]
2. + <b>-es</b> (ch, sh, s, x, ss)	bench — benches [ <b>lɪz</b> ] dress — dresses	lash — lashes box — boxes
3. -f, -fe — <b>-ves</b>	wolf — wol <b>ves</b> <b>Note:</b> chiefs, roofs, cliffs, handkerchiefs, safes, hoofs/hooves, beliefs	wife — w <b>ives</b>
4. -o — <b>-oes</b>	potato — potato <b>es</b> <b>Note:</b> vowel (голосний) + o (radios), double (подвійне) o (Zoos), abbreviations (скорочення) (photos), musical instruments (pianos), proper nouns (власні назви) (Eskimos), some nouns can take both <b>-es</b> or <b>-s</b>	
5. a) <b>consonant</b> (приголосний) + y — <b>-ies</b> b) <b>vowel</b> (голосний) + y — <b>-s</b>	fly — fl <b>ies</b> day — day <b>s</b> , boy — boy <b>s</b>	



<b>6. compound nouns</b> (складні іменники) a) with -man b) <b>noun + noun</b> c) noun + prep + noun d) adjective + noun e) non-noun	a) policeman — policemen <b>Note:</b> German — <b>the</b> Germans Roman — <b>the</b> Romans b) snowball — snowballs c) commander-in-chief — commanders-in-chief d) blackboard — blackboards e) forget-me-not — forget-me-nots
<b>7. irregular</b> (неправильні)	child — <b>children</b> man — <b>men</b> woman — <b>women</b> goose — <b>geese</b> tooth — <b>teeth</b> mouse — <b>mice</b> deer — <b>deer</b> sheep — <b>sheep</b> aircraft — <b>aircraft</b> means — <b>means</b> species — <b>species</b>
<b>8. group nouns</b> = a group of people (they can take either a singular or a plural verb)	army, audience, class, club, crowd, family, press, public, team, etc.

## THE POSSESSIVE CASE OF THE NOUN

(Присвійний відмінок іменника)

Betty has got a dog. = This is Betty's dog.

The boys have got books. = These are the boys' books.

The children have got a ball. = This is the children's ball.

The men have got cases. = These are the men's cases.

Robert Burns wrote a poem. = This is Robert Burns's poem.

John Brown has got a car. = This is John Brown's car.

The house has got a red roof. = This is the red roof of the house.

## 2. The Verb (дієслово)

### TENSE

(Граматична категорія часу)

	<b>POSITIVE</b> (Ствердження)	<b>NEGATIVE</b> (Заперечення)	<b>INTERROGATIVE</b> (Питання)
<b>Present Simple</b> <b>V (V<sub>s</sub>)</b> (Теперішній неозначений (простий) час) <b>Time expressions</b> (слова, що виражають категорію часу): week, every day, etc., sometimes, seldom, usually, often, never, always, sometimes, etc.	I <b>often read</b> English books. He <b>seldom reads</b> English books.	I <b>don't read</b> French books. He <b>doesn't read</b> Spanish books.	Do you <b>read</b> books? <b>Does</b> he <b>read</b> books? Who <b>reads</b> books? What <b>do</b> you <b>read</b> ?



	POSITIVE (Ствердження)	NEGATIVE (Заперечення)	INTERROGATIVE (Питання)
<b>Past Simple</b> <b>V<sub>ED</sub> (V<sub>2</sub>)</b> (Минулий неозначений (простий) час) <b>Time expressions:</b> yesterday, two days ago, etc., last week, month, etc., in 1859, in winter, at 10 p.m., when, then, etc.	I <b>heard</b> this song <b>two days</b> <b>ago</b> .	He <b>didn't hear</b> this song <b>yesterday</b> .	<b>Did</b> you <b>hear</b> the song <b>yesterday</b> ? Who <b>heard</b> this song <b>yesterday</b> ? What <b>did</b> you <b>hear yesterday</b> ? <b>When</b> did you <b>hear</b> this song?
<b>Future Simple</b> <b>shall/will + V</b> (Майбутній неозначений (простий) час) <b>Time expressions:</b> tomorrow, next week, in an hour, tonight, the day after tomorrow, soon, etc.	I <b>shall go</b> to the park <b>soon</b> . He <b>will go</b> to the park <b>in an hour</b> .	He <b>won't go</b> to the cinema with us <b>tomorrow</b> . I <b>shan't go</b> to the park <b>in an</b> <b>hour</b> .	<b>Will</b> you <b>go</b> to the park <b>next week</b> ? Who <b>will go</b> to the park with us? Where <b>shall we</b> <b>go in an hour</b> ?
<b>Present Continuous</b> <b>am/is/are + V<sub>ING</sub></b> (Теперішній тривалий час) <b>Time expressions:</b> now, today, this week, at present, at the moment, etc.	I <b>am sitting</b> by the fire. He <b>is reading</b> a book. They <b>are</b> sleeping.	I <b>am not sitting</b> on the chair. He <b>isn't</b> watching TV. They <b>aren't</b> sleeping.	<b>Am</b> I <b>sitting</b> by the fire? <b>Is</b> he <b>sitting</b> on the chair? <b>Are</b> you <b>reading</b> a book? Who <b>is sitting</b> by the fire? What <b>are</b> you doing?
<b>Past Continuous</b> <b>was/were + V<sub>ING</sub></b> (Минулий тривалий час) <b>Time expressions:</b> at 7 o'clock last night, while you were reading, when you came, from 6 to 8 o'clock yesterday.	I <b>was writing</b> a letter. They <b>were writing</b> a letter.	I <b>wasn't writing</b> a letter. They <b>weren't</b> writing a letter.	<b>Have</b> you <b>seen</b> this film? <b>Has</b> he <b>been</b> to Greece? Who <b>has been</b> to Italy? Where <b>have</b> you <b>been</b> ? <b>Note:</b> When did you see this film?



	<b>POSITIVE</b> (Ствердження)	<b>NEGATIVE</b> (Заперечення)	<b>INTERROGATIVE</b> (Питання)
<b>Present Perfect</b> <b>have/has + V<sub>ED</sub> (V<sub>3</sub>)</b> <i>(Теперішній</i> <i>перфектний час)</i> <b>Time expressions:</b> ever, never, yet, already, for, since, just, always, so far, how long, recently, today, etc.	<b>I have seen</b> this film. <b>He has</b> been to London.	<b>I haven't seen</b> the film. He <b>hasn't been</b> to France.	<b>Have</b> you <b>seen</b> the film <b>already</b> ? <b>Have</b> you <b>ever</b> <b>seen</b> the film?

### 3. The Adjective (прикметник)

#### THE ORDER OF ADJECTIVES

(Порядок прикметників у реченні)

	<b>size</b>	<b>age</b>	<b>shape</b>	<b>colour</b>	<b>origin</b>	<b>material</b>	<b>noun</b>
This is a	large	old	square	brown	French	wooden	table.

#### THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON

(Ступені порівняння прикметників)

<b>Kind of Adjective</b> (Вид прикметника)	<b>Positive</b> (Позитивний ступінь)	<b>Comparative</b> (Порівняльний ступінь)	<b>Superlative</b> (Найвищий ступінь)
<b>one-syllable</b> (односкладові)	1. nice 2. slow 3. fat	nice <b>er</b> slow <b>er</b> fat <b>ter</b>	(the) nice <b>est</b> (the) slow <b>est</b> (the) fat <b>est</b>
<b>two-syllable ending in</b> (двоскладові із закінченням ...) -er, -ow, -y	1. clever 2. narrow 3. happy <b>Note:</b> gay	clever <b>er</b> narrow <b>er</b> happi <b>er</b> gay <b>er</b>	(the) clever <b>est</b> (the) narrow <b>est</b> (the) happi <b>est</b> (the) gay <b>est</b>
<b>two-syllable with other</b> <b>endings</b> (двоскладові із іншими закінченнями)	gentle	<b>more</b> gentle	(the) <b>most</b> gentle
<b>more than two syllable</b> (більше двох складів)	beautiful	<b>more</b> beautiful	(the) <b>most</b> beautiful
<b>irregular</b>	1. <b>good</b> 2. <b>bad</b> 3. <b>many (much)</b> 4. <b>little</b>	<b>better</b> <b>worse</b> <b>more</b> <b>less</b>	(the) <b>best</b> (the) <b>worst</b> (the) <b>most</b> (the) <b>least</b>



Kind of Adjective (Вид прикметника)	Positive (Позитивний ступінь)	Comparative (Порівняльний ступінь)	Superlative (Найвищий ступінь)
<b>double forms of degrees</b> (двоякі форми ступенів порівняння)	1. far 2. near 3. old	far <b>ther</b> (longer) fur <b>ther</b> (more) near <b>er</b> — old <b>er</b> eld <b>er</b>	(the) far <b>thest</b> (the) fur <b>thest</b> (the) near <b>est</b> (the) <b>next</b> (the) old <b>est</b> (the) eld <b>est</b>

#### 4. The Adverb (прислівник)

##### THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON

(Ступені порівняння)

Kind of Adjective (Вид прислівника)		Comparative (Порівняльний ступінь)	Superlative (Найвищий ступінь)
<b>the same form as an adjective</b> (така ж форма як і в прикметника)		fast <b>er</b>	(the) fast <b>est</b>
<b>two-syllable ending in -y</b> (двоскладовий із закінченням -y)		earl <b>ier</b>	(the) earl <b>iest</b>
<b>two-syllable or compound</b> (adj. + <b>-ly</b> ) (двоскладовий або складний (прикметник + -ly))		<b>more</b> often <b>more</b> clearly	(the) <b>most</b> often (the) <b>most</b> clearly
<b>irregular</b> (неправильний)		<b>better</b> <b>worse</b> <b>more</b>	(the) best (the) worst (the) most

##### TYPES OF ADVERBS

(Типи прислівників)

How of <b>manner</b> (Способу дії)	Where (of <b>place</b> ) (Місця)	When (of <b>time</b> ) (Часу)	How often (of <b>frequency</b> ) (Частоту дії)
easily badly etc.	there somewhere etc.	now yesterday etc.	usually sometimes etc.



## THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS

(Утворення прислівників)

	Adjective (Прикметник)	Adverb (Прислівник)
1. adjective + <b>-ly</b>	slow	slowly
2. adjectives ending in <b>-le</b>	simple	simply
3. adjectives ending in <b>-y</b>	angry gay	angrily gaily
4. the same form	fast hard	fast hard
5. irregular	good	well

**ORDER OF ADVERBS** (Порядок прислівників у реченні):

**ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY** (Прислівники частоти)

1. Usually go after an auxiliary verb but before the main verb	He <b>never</b> comes late. Does he <b>ever</b> come late?
2. Before the verb <b>to be</b>	She is <b>never</b> late for the lessons.

**WITH A VERB OF MOVEMENT**

(З дієсловом із значенням руху)

	place	manner	time
He walks	home	quickly	every afternoon.

**WHEN THERE ARE MORE THAN TWO ADVERBS**

(Коли у реченні більш, ніж два прислівники)

	manner	place	time
She was sitting	lazily	by the pool	all day long.

**DETERMINERS** (Прислівники кількості)

	Uncountable Nouns (Прислівники, що вживаються з незчислюваними іменниками)	Plural Countable Nouns (Прислівники, що вживаються із зчислюваними іменниками)
<b>Positive</b> (в ствердженні)	much little some a lot of (plenty of) There is ...	many few some a lot of (plenty of) There are...



	<b>Uncountable Nouns</b> (Прислівники, що вживаються з незчислюваними іменниками)	<b>Plural Countable Nouns</b> (Прислівники, що вживаються із зчислюваними іменниками)
<b>Negative</b> (в запереченні)	any no not much There isn't any... There is...	any no not many There aren't any... There are...
<b>Interrogative</b> (у питанні)	any Is there...? How much (is/does)...?	any Are there...? How many (are/do)...?

## 5. The Pronoun (займенник)

<b>Subject Pronouns</b> (Особові займенники)	<b>Object Pronouns</b> (Об'єктні займенники)	<b>Possessive Adjectives</b> (Присвійні займенники)	
I you he she it we they	me you him her it us them	my your his her its our their	Give it to <b>me</b> . It's <b>my</b> bag. I'll give it to <b>you</b> . It's <b>your</b> bag. Give it to <b>him</b> . It's <b>his</b> bag. Give it to <b>her</b> . It's <b>her</b> bag.  Give it to <b>us</b> . It's <b>our</b> bag. Give it to <b>them</b> . It's <b>their</b> bag.

## 6. Conjunctions (сполучники)

### AND / BUT / OR

	<b>1st sentence</b>	<b>2nd sentence</b>	<b>example</b>
<b>and</b> <b>but</b> <b>or</b>	positive positive negative	positive negative negative	She went to the shop <b>and</b> bought some bread. She went to the shop, <b>but</b> she didn't buy anything. She can't speak English <b>or</b> play tennis.

### BECAUSE / SO

	<b>meaning</b>	<b>example</b>
<b>because</b>	introduces a reason	She bought some hot dogs <b>because</b> she was hungry.
<b>so</b>	introduces a result	She was very hungry <b>so</b> she went to the cafe.



## FOR / SINCE

	meaning	example
<b>for</b>	a period of time	I haven't seen him <b>for</b> 3 years.
<b>since</b>	a starting point (a point of time)	I haven't seen him <b>since</b> 1996.

## 7. Prepositions (прийменники)

## REMEMBER!

<b>in+</b>	cities / town / streets / the suburbs / an armchair / danger / the middle of / the queue
<b>at+</b>	house number (at 23 Oxford St.) / home / school / university / work / bus-stop
<b>on+</b>	the floor / the outskirts / a chair / foot / holiday
<b>by+</b>	bus / taxi / car / helicopter / train / plane / ship / boat / air / sea
<b>Note:</b>	<b>on the</b> bus / plane / train / coach / ship / boat <b>in a</b> taxi / car / helicopter

## KINDS OF PREPOSITIONS

(Види прийменників)

<b>of place</b> (прийменники місця)	in/inside, on, at, near, under, over, below, above, round/around, among, between, behind, in front of, opposite, to the left/right, next to/beside, against
<b>of movement</b> (руху)	along, across, up, down, onto, off, into, out of, past, over, from ... to, towards, through
<b>of time</b> (часу)	in, on, at, from ... to, by

## PREPOSITIONS OF TIME

(Прийменники категорії часу)

at	in	on
<b>at</b> 8:15 <b>at</b> Christmas/Easter <b>at</b> night <b>at</b> midnight <b>at</b> noon <b>at</b> the weekend	<b>in</b> the morning <b>in</b> the evening <b>in</b> July (months) <b>in</b> summer (seasons) <b>in</b> 1998 (years) <b>in</b> the 20th century	<b>on</b> Sunday <b>on</b> the 28th of March <b>on</b> a winter night <b>on</b> Monday morning
<b>Note:</b> <b>on</b> time = at the right time <b>at</b> 8:30 = exactly at that time <b>in</b> time = early enough, not late <b>by</b> 8:30 = not later than that time, before		



## 8. Articles (артиклі)

a/an	the
1. with singular countable nouns in general: <b>An</b> aeroplane is faster than <b>a</b> train.	1. with singular and plural nouns (countable and uncountable) talking about something specific or when mentioned for a second time: <b>The</b> boy who has left is my cousin.
2. often with the verbs <b>to be</b> and <b>to have</b> : He is <b>a</b> doctor. I have got <b>a</b> camera.	2. with words: cinema, theatre, radio, country(side) seaside, beach, etc.: We go to <b>the</b> beach every Sunday.
3. with singular countable nouns to represent <b>a</b> class of people or animals: <b>A</b> dolphin is more intelligent than <b>a</b> shark.	3. with singular countable nouns to represent a class of people or animals: <b>The</b> dolphin is more intelligent than the shark.
the	no article
1. nouns which are unique: I have never been to <b>the</b> Acropolis.	1. proper nouns: Paula comes from Canada.
2. names of cinemas ( <b>the</b> Peremoha), hotels ( <b>the</b> Hilton), theatres ( <b>the</b> National Theatre), museums ( <b>The</b> Tate Gallery), newspapers ( <b>the</b> Times), ships ( <b>the</b> Queen Mary)	2. names of sports, activities, colours, substances and meals: He plays tennis well. She likes blue. Lunch is ready.
3. names of rivers ( <b>the</b> Thames), seas and oceans ( <b>the</b> Black Sea, <b>the</b> Pacific Ocean), groups of islands/states ( <b>the</b> Bahamas, <b>the</b> USA), mountain ranges ( <b>the</b> Alps), deserts ( <b>the</b> Gobi desert), names with <b>of</b> ( <b>The</b> Tower of London)	3. names of countries (England), cities and towns (London), streets (Oxford Street), parks (Hyde Park), mountains (Mount Everest), island (Cyprus), continents (Europe)
4. names of lakes ( <b>the</b> Sinevyr)	4. names of lakes (when the word lake is used): Lake Michigan
5. musical instruments: Can you play <b>the</b> guitar?	5. when a possessive adjective is before a noun: Isn't it your coat?
6. names of people / families / nationalities (in the plural): The Smiths visited us last Sunday. The English are rather snobbish.	6. the words <b>home</b> and <b>father</b> / <b>mother</b> when we talk about our own home / parents



the	no article
7. titles without proper names	7. titles with proper names
8. adjectives used as plural nouns (the rich) and before the superlative degree of adjectives / adverbs (the best): He is <b>the</b> best student of our class.	8. with the words: bed, school, church, hospital, prison, when they are used for the reason they exist: John was sent to prison. <b>Note:</b> His mother went to <b>the</b> prison to visit him.



## A

**able** [eɪbl] здатний, здібний  
**to be able to** могли щось зробити  
**aborigine** [ˌæbəˈrɪdʒɪni] абориген  
**about** [əˈbaʊt] про  
**above** [əˈbʌv] над  
**above zero** вище нуля  
**accent** [ˈæksent] 1. акцент; 2. вимова  
**ache** [eɪk] біль  
**across** [əˈkrɒs] через  
**act out** [ˈæktˈaʊt] розіграти у ролях  
**activity** [ækˈtɪvɪti] діяльність, активність  
**add** [æd] додавати  
**address** [əˈdres] адреса  
**adult** [ædʌlt] дорослий  
**advantage** [ədˈvɑːntɪdʒ] 1. перевага; 2. вигода  
**advice** [ədˈvaɪs] порада  
**advise** [ədˈvaɪz] радити  
**afraid** [əˈfreɪd] наляканий  
**to be afraid of smb/smith** боятись когось/чогось  
**after** [ˈɑːftə] після  
**again** [əˈgeɪn] знову  
**against** [əˈgeɪnst] проти  
**age** [eɪdʒ] вік  
**agree** [əˈɡriː] погоджуватись  
**air hostess** [ˈeəˌheʊstɪs] стюардеса  
**aid** [eɪd] допомога  
**air** [eə] повітря  
**airport** [ˈeəpɔːt] аеропорт  
**album** [ˈælbəm] альбом  
**alike** [əˈlaɪk] схожий, подібний  
**all** [ɔːl] всі  
**all day long** весь день  
**all over** [ɔːlˈəʊvə] усюди  
**all over the world** по цілому світу  
**all the time** весь час  
**allow** [əˈlaʊ] дозволяти  
**almost** [ˈɔːlməʊst] майже  
**alone** [əˈləʊn] сам  
**along** [əˈlɒŋ] вздовж  
**already** [ɔːlˈredɪ] вже  
**also** [ˈɔːlsəʊ] також  
**always** [ˈɔːlwəz] завжди  
**America** [əˈmerɪkə] Америка  
**American** [əˈmerɪkən] американський  
**among** [əˈmʌŋ] серед  
**ancient** [ˈeɪnfənt] давній  
**animal** [ˈænɪməl] тварина

**another** [əˈnʌðə] інший, ще один  
**answer** [ˈɑːnsə] *n.* відповідь;  
*v.* відповідати  
**any** [ˈeni] який-небудь  
**appear** [əˈpiə] з'являться  
**applaud** [əˈplɔːd] аплодувати  
**applause** [əˈplɔːz] аплодисменти, оплески  
**April** [ˈeɪprəl] квітень  
**armchair** [ˈɑːmtʃeə] крісло  
**around** [əˈraʊnd] навколо  
**arrange** [əˈreɪndʒ] 1. упорядковувати;  
2. домовлятися  
**arrive** [əˈraɪv] прибувати, приїжджати  
**art(s)** [ɑːt] мистецтво  
**article** [ˈɑːtɪkl] стаття  
**artist** [ˈɑːtɪst] митець, художник  
**artistic** [ɑːˈtɪstɪk] художній  
**as** [æz] 1. як; 2. тому що, під час того, як  
**assembly hall** актовий зал  
**at** [æt] коло, біля  
**at 10 past 8** о 8 годині 10 хвилин  
**at home** вдома  
**attentive** [əˈtentɪv] уважний  
**attraction** [əˈtrækʃən] атракціон  
**August** [ˈɔːɡəst] серпень  
**aunt** [ɑːnt] тьотя  
**Australia** [bʊˈstreɪliə] Австралія  
**Australian** [bʊˈstreɪliən] австралійський  
**awful** [ˈɔːfəl] жахливий

## B

**baby** [ˈbeɪbi] немовля  
**back** [bæk] *n.* в задній частині чогось; *adv.* назад  
**badge** [bædʒ] значок  
**bag** [bæg] сумка, портфель  
**bake** [beɪk] випікати (хліб)  
**baker** [ˈbeɪkə] пекар  
**at the baker's** у хлібному магазині/відділі  
**balcony** [ˈbælkəni] балкон  
**balloon** [bəˈluːn] повітряна кулька  
**bar** [bɑː] шматок, брусок  
**bar of chocolate** плитка шоколаду  
**basketball** [ˈbɑːskɪtbɔːl] баскетбол  
**bathroom** [ˈbɑːθrʊm] ванна кімната  
**be (not) allowed** (не) бути дозволеним  
**beat** [biːt] *n.* удар, биття; *v.* (beat, beaten) бити  
**beauty** [ˈbjuːti] краса, красуня



**because** [bi'kɒz] тому що  
**become** [bi'kʌm] (became, become) ставати  
**bedroom** ['bedrʊm] спальня  
**beach** [bi:tʃ] пляж  
**before** [bi'fɔ:] перед, до  
**begin** [bi'gin] (began, begun) починати(сь)  
**behind** [bi'haɪnd] за, позаду  
**bell** [bel] дзвін  
**believe** [bi'li:v] вірити  
**I can't believe it!** Не можу в це повірити.  
**below** [bi'ləʊ] вниз, нижче  
**between** [bi'twi:n] між  
**biography** [baɪ'ɒɡrəfi] біографія  
**bird** [bɜ:d] птах  
**birth** [bɜ:θ] народження  
**birthday** ['bɜ:θdeɪ] день народження  
**bit (a bit)** [bɪt] небагато, трішки  
**blackboard** ['blækbɔ:d] шкільна дошка  
**Black Sea** ['blæk,si:] Чорне море  
**blouse** [blaʊz] блузка, сорочка  
**blow** (blew, blown) [bləʊ] дути  
**blow up** надувати  
**board** [bɔ:d] борт  
**on board the ship** на борту корабля  
**boat** [bəʊt] човен, корабель  
**body** ['bɒdi] тіло  
**boil** [bɔɪl] варити  
**book** [bʊk] *л.* книга; *в.* замовляти заздалегідь, бронювати  
**to book a ticket** замовити квиток  
**bookcase** ['bʊkkeɪs] книжкова шафа  
**boomerang** ['bu:məɾæŋ] бумеранг  
**boot** [bu:t] черевик  
**boring** ['bɔ:ɪŋ] нудний  
**born** [bɔ:n] народжений  
**to be born** народитись  
**both** [bəʊθ] обидва  
**bottle** [bɒtl] пляшка  
**bottom** ['bɒtəm] дно, низ, нижня частина  
**at the bottom of** внизу чогось  
**bowl** [bəʊl] миска, глибока тарілка  
**brackets** ['brækits] дужки  
**branch** [brɑ:ntʃ] гілка  
**brave** [breɪv] сміливий, хоробрий  
**bread** [bred] хліб  
**break** (broke, broken) [breɪk] ламати, розбивати

**breakfast** ['brekfəst] сніданок  
**breathe** [bri:ð] дихати  
**bridge** [brɪdʒ] міст  
**bright** [braɪt] яскравий  
**bring** (brought, brought) [brɪŋ] приносити, привозити  
**Britain** [brɪtən] Британія  
**British** ['brɪtɪʃ] британський, англійський  
**brush** [brʌʃ] *л.* щітка; *в.* причісуватись, чистити щіткою  
**build** [brɪld] (built, built) будувати  
**burn** [bɜ:n] (burnt, burnt) 1. запалювати; 2. горіти, палати  
**business** ['biznis] справа, діло  
**on business** у справі  
**busy** ['bɪzi] зайнятий  
**but** [bʌt] але  
**butcher** ['bʊtʃə] м'ясник  
**at the butcher's** у м'ясному відділі (магазині)  
**butter** [bʌtə] масло  
**button** [bʌtn] 1. гудзик; 2. кнопка, клавіша  
**buy** [baɪ] (bought, bought) купувати  
**by** [baɪ] біля  
**by car** машиною  
**by plane** літаком  
**by train** поїздом

## C

**calendar** ['kælɪndə] календар  
**call** [kɔ:l] 1. кликати; 2. дзвонити  
**camel** ['kæmɪl] верблюд  
**Canada** ['kænədə] Канада  
**Canadian** [kə'neɪdiən] канадський  
**canteen** [kæn'ti:n] буфет  
**capital** ['kæpɪtl] столиця  
**care** [keə] 1. турбота; 2. піклування  
**to take care of smb/smt** турбуватись (піклуватись) про когось/щось  
**careful** ['keəfəl] обережний, уважний  
**carefully** ['keəfəli] обережно, уважно  
**carols** ['kærəlz] різдвяні пісні, колядки  
**Carpethian** [kɑ:'peɪθiən] карпатський  
**Carpethian Mountains** Карпатські гори  
**carriage** ['kæriɪdʒ] пасажирський вагон  
**carrot (carrots)** ['kærət] морква  
**carry** ['kæri] носити  
**cart** [kɑ:t] віз, візок  
**cartoon** [kɑ: 'tu:n] мультфільм



**carton** ['kɑ:tən] картон, картонна упаковка  
**cast** [kɑ:st] склад виконавців  
**castle** ['kɑ:sl] замок  
**catch** (caught, caught) [kætʃ] ловити, піймати  
**cause** [kɔ:z] спричиняти  
**celebrate** ['selibreɪt] святкувати  
**celebration** [ˌselɪˈbreɪʃn] святкування  
**central** ['sentrəl] центральний  
**centre** ['sentə] центр  
**certain** ['sɜ:tn] певний, конкретний  
**certainly** ['sɜ:tnli] звичайно, безперечно  
**champion** ['tʃæmpiən] чемпіон  
**change** ['tʃeɪndʒ] *n.* задача, дрібні гроші; *v.* міняти, робити пересадку  
**changeable** ['tʃeɪndʒəbəl] мінливий  
**character** ['kærɪktə] герой, персонаж  
**cheap** [tʃi:p] дешевий  
**check (up)** ['tʃekʌp] перевіряти  
**a check-in desk** вікно реєстрації документів  
**cheese** [tʃi:z] твердий сир  
**chemist** ['kemɪst] аптекар  
**at the chemist's** в аптеці  
**chestnut** ['tʃestnʌt] каштанове дерево; каштан  
**chicken (chick)** ['tʃɪkɪn] курчатко  
**choice** [tʃɔɪs] вибір  
**choose** (chose, chosen) [tʃu:z] вибирати  
**Christmas** ['krɪsməs] Різдво  
**church** [tʃɜ:tʃ] церква  
**circle** ['sɜ:kl] *n.* коло; *v.* обводити колом  
**circus** ['sɜ:kəs] *n.* цирк; *adj.* цирковий  
**city** ['sɪti] велике місто  
**classmate** ['klɑ:smeɪt] однокласник  
**clean** [kli:n] *adj.* чистий; *v.* чистити, прибирати  
**clearly** ['kliəli] ясно, зрозуміло  
**clever** ['klevə] розумний  
**climb** [klaɪm] залазити, лізти (вгору)  
**clock** [klɒk] годинник (настільний, настінний, баштовий)  
**alarm-clock** будильник  
**close** [kləʊz] *v.* закривати; *adj.* близький  
**clothes** [kləʊðz] одяг  
**cloud** [klaʊd] хмара, хмаринка

**clown** [klaʊn] клоун  
**coat** [kəʊt] пальто, піджак, куртка  
**coffee** ['kɒfi] кава  
**coin** [kɔɪn] монета  
**cold** [kəʊld] холодний  
**collect** [kəˈlekt] збирати, колекціонувати  
**collector** [kəˈlektə] колекціонер  
**colour** ['kʌlə] колір  
**coloured** ['kʌləd] розмальований  
**colourful** ['kʌləfʊl] яскравий, мальовничий  
**column** ['kɒləm] колонка  
**to come back** повертатись  
**to come from** 1. походити (бути родом із); 2. повертатись з  
**to come home** приходити додому  
**comfortable** ['kʌmfətəbl] зручний  
**common** ['kɒmən] звичайний  
**communicate** [kəˈmju:nikeɪt] 1. спілкуватись; 2. передавати; 3. повідомляти  
**communication** [kəˈmju:nɪˈkeɪʃn] спілкування  
**compare** [kəmˈpeə] порівнювати  
**compete** [kəmˈpi:t] змагатись  
**competition** [kəmˌpiˈtɪʃn] змагання  
**complete** [kəmˈpli:t] повний  
**compose** [kəmˈpəʊz] створювати, складати  
**composition** [ˌkɒmpəˈzɪʃn] твір  
**composer** [kəmˈpɒzɪtə] складач, набирач, верстальник  
**computer** [kəmˈpjʊ:tə] комп'ютер  
**computer programmer** програміст  
**concert** ['kɒnsət] концерт  
**congratulate** [kənˈgrætʃuleɪt] поздоровляти  
**congratulation** [kənˈgrætʃʊleɪʃn] поздоровлення  
**contest** [kənˈtest] змагання, конкурс  
**continue** [kənˈtɪnju:] продовжувати  
**connect** [kəˈnekt] 1. з'єднувати, зв'язувати; 2. установлювати зв'язки  
**conversation** [ˌkɒnvəˈseɪʃən] розмова  
**cook** [kʊk] *n.* кухар; *v.* готувати (їжу)  
**cooker** ['kʊkə] кухонна плита  
**copy out** ['kɒpiˈaʊt] зписувати, переписувати  
**corner** ['kɔ:nə] кут  
**correct** [kəˈrekt] правильний  
**correctly** [kəˈrektli] правильно



**correspondent** [ˌkɒrɪˈspɒndənt] кореспондент (газети тощо)  
**cost** [kɒst] (cost, cost) коштувати  
**caught** [kɒt] *n.* кашель; *v.* кашляти  
**could** (past form from verb **can**) [kʊd]  
**count** [kaʊnt] рахувати, лічити  
**country** [ˈkʌntri] 1. країна; 2. сільська місцевість  
**in the country** за містом  
**court** [kɔ:t] 1. суд; 2. подвір'я  
**cousin** [ˈkʌzn] двоюрідний родич (брат, сестра)  
**cover** [ˈkʌvə] *n.* обкладинка, покриття; *v.* покривати  
**craft** [krɑ:ft] ремесло  
**craftsman** [ˈkrɑ:ftsmən] ремісник  
**cracker** [krækə] хлопавка  
**cream** [kri:m] вершки, крем  
**create** [kri:ˈeɪt] створювати, творити  
**cross** [krɒs] *n.* хрест; *adj.* поперечний, той, що перетинає; *v.* перетинати, переходити  
**cry** [kraɪ] кричати, плакати  
**culture** [ˈkʌltʃə] культура  
**cup** [kʌp] горнятко, чашка  
**curly** [kɜ:li] кучерявий  
**custom** [ˈkʌstəm] звичай  
**cut** [kʌt] (cut, cut) (роз)різати  
**to cut out** вирізати  
**cycling** [ˈsaɪklɪŋ] велоспорт

## D

**dairy** [ˈdeəri] молочний  
**dangerous** [ˈdeɪndʒərəs] небезпечний  
**dark** [dɑ:k] темний  
**It is getting dark.** Темніє. (Стає темно.)  
**date** [deɪt] 1. дата; 2. строк; 3. побачення  
**day** [deɪ] день  
**day off** вихідний день  
**December** [dɪˈsembə] грудень  
**decide** [dɪˈsaɪd] вирішувати  
**decorate** [ˈdekəreɪt] прикрашати  
**decoration** [ˌdekəˈreɪʃn] прикраси, декорації (про сцену)  
**deep** [di:p] глибокий  
**degree** [dɪɡˈri:] 1. ступінь; 2. градус  
**delicious** [dɪˈlɪʃəs] 1. чудовий; 2. дуже смачний  
**deliver** [dɪˈlɪvə] доставляти, постачати

**department** [dɪˈpɑ:tmənt] відділ  
**department store** [dɪˈpɑ:tməntˈstɔ:] універмаг  
**depend (on, upon)** [dɪˈpend] залежати (від)  
**describe** [dɪˈskraɪb] змальовувати  
**description** [dɪˈskrɪpʃən] 1. опис; 2. змалювання  
**dessert** [dɪˈzɑ:t] десерт  
**destroy** [dɪˈstrɔɪ] руйнувати  
**develop** [dɪˈveləp] розвивати  
**devoted (to smb)** [dɪˈvəʊtɪd] відданий, вірний (комусь)  
**dialogue** [ˈdaɪələɡ] діалог  
**diary** [ˈdaɪəri] щоденник  
**dictionary** [ˈdɪkʃənəri] словник  
**differ** [ˈdɪfə] відпізнатись  
**difference** [ˈdɪfrəns] різниця  
**different** [ˈdɪfrənt] різний, інший  
**difficult** [ˈdɪfɪkəlt] важкий, складний  
**difficulty** [ˈdɪfɪkəlti] складність  
**dirty** [ˈdɜ:ti] брудний  
**disadvantage** [ˌdɪsədˈvɑ:ntɪdʒ] невігода  
**disagree** [ˌdɪsəˈɡri:] не погоджуватись  
**discover** [dɪsˈkʌvə] відкривати, виявляти  
**display** [dɪsˈpleɪ] показувати, виставляти на показ  
**discuss** [dɪˈskʌs] обговорювати  
**dish** [dɪʃ] 1. страва; 2. тарілка  
**dishwasher** [ˈdɪʃ,wɒʃə] посудомийна машина  
**dislike** [dɪsˈlaɪk] не подобатись  
**Dneper** [ˈdni:pə] Дніпро  
**to do the shopping** робити покупки  
**dolphin** [ˈdɒlfɪn] дельфін  
**donkey** [ˈdɒŋki] осел  
**double** [dʌbl] подвійний  
**double-decker** [ˌdʌbəlˈdekə] двоповерховий автобус  
**down** [daʊn] вниз  
**downstairs** [ˈdaʊnˈsteəz] вниз сходами  
**to draw in pencil** малювати олівцем  
**drive** [draɪv] (drove, driven) їздити за кермом  
**driver** [ˈdraɪvə] водій  
**dry** [draɪ] *adj.* сухий; *v.* сушити  
**dull** [dʌl] скучний, нудний  
**dust** [dʌst] пил



**duster** [ˈdʌstə] ганчірка

**duty** [ˈdʒʊti] обов'язок

## Е

**each** [i:tʃ] кожний

**each other** [i:tʃˈʌðə] один одного

**ear** [ˈɪə] вухо

**earache** [ˈɪərəɪk] біль у вусі

**early** [ˈɜ:li] рано

**Earth** [z:θ] Земля

**east** [i:st] схід

**Easter** [ˈi:stə] Пасха

**Eastern** [ˈi:stən] східний

**easy** [ˈi:zi] легкий, простий

**eat** [i:t] (ate, eaten) їсти

**editor** [ˈeditə] 1. редактор; 2.

видавець

**electricity** [ɪˌlekˈtrɪsɪti] електрика

**electronic** [ɪləkˈtrɒnɪk] електронний

**electronic mail (e-mail)** електронна пошта

**elephant** [ˈelɪfənt] слон

**else** [els] що

**emblem** [ˈembləm] емблема, герб

**embroidered towel** вишитий рушник

**embroidery** [ɪmˈbrɔɪdəri] 1.

вишивання; 2. вишивка

**empty** [ˈempti] порожній

**end** [end] *n.* кінець; *v.* закінчувати(сь)

**engineer** [ˌendʒiˈniə] інженер

**enjoy** [ɪnˈdʒɔɪ] радіти,

насладжуватись

**enjoyable** [ɪnˈdʒɔɪəbəl] приємний

**enter** [ˈentə] входити, вступати

**envelope** [ˈenvələʊp] конверт

**equator** [ɪˈkweɪtə] екватор

**especially** [əˈspeʃəli] особливо

**Europe** [ˈjʊərəp] Європа

**European** [jʊərəˈpiən] Європейський

**even** [i:vn] навіть

**ever** [ˈevə] коли-небудь

**every** [ˈevri] кожний

**everybody** [ˈevrɪbɒdi] кожний (*про людей*)

**everything** [ˈevriθɪŋ] все

**examine** [ɪgˈzæmɪn] *n.* екзамен; *v.* 1. екзаменувати; 2. оглядати

**excellent** [ˈeksələnt] відмінний

**exchange** [ɪksˈtʃeɪndʒ]

обмінювати(сь)

**exiting** [ɪkˈsaɪtɪŋ] хвилюючий

**excuse** [ɪksˈkju:z] вибачати

**Excuse me...** Вибачте...

**exercise** [ˈeksəsaɪz] вправа

**exercise-book** [ˈeksəsaɪz.bʊk] зошит

**expensive** [ɪkˈspensɪv] дорогий

**experience** [ɪkˈspɪəriəns] переживати; відчувати

**explain to (smb)** [ɪkˈspleɪn]

пояснювати

**explore** [ɪkˈsplɔ:ɪ] досліджувати

**extinct** [ɪkˈstɪŋkt] 1. потухлий; 2.

вимерлий; 3. щезлий

**extinction** [ɪkˈstɪŋkʃən] 1. гасіння; 2.

вимирання

**extra** [ˈekstrə] додатковий

## F

**fact** [fækt] факт

**in fact** (на)справді

**factory** [ˈfæktəri] фабрика

**fair** [ˈfeə] *n.* ярмарок

**firework** [ˈfaɪəwɜ:k] феєрверк

**fair** [ˈfeə] *adj.* чесний, справедливий; *adv.* чесно, ясно, справедливо

**It isn't fair...** Це несправедливо...

**fairy tale** [ˈfeərɪteɪl] казка

**fall** [fɔ:l] *n.* осінь (*amer.*); (*fell, fallen*) *v.* падати

**false** [fɔ:ls] невірний, неправильний

**famous** [ˈfeɪməs] знаменитий, відомий

**famous for smth** відомий чимось

**fantastic** [fænˈtæstɪk] чудовий, казковий, фантастичний

**far** [fɑ:] *adj.* далекий; *adv.* далеко

**far from** далеко від

**fast** [fɑ:st] *adj.* швидкий; *adv.* швидко

**fat** [fæt] товстий

**favourite** [ˈfeɪvərɪt] улюблений

**feed** [fi:d] годувати

**feel** [fi:l] (*felt, felt*) відчувати, почуватись

**to feel bad** почуватись погано

**to feel excited** почуватись збудженим

**few** [fju:] декілька, трохи

**field** [fi:ld] поле

**fight** [faɪt] *n.* бій; *v.* (*fought, fought*) битись, боротись

**fill** [fɪl] наповнювати

**fill in** [fɪlˈɪn] вставити, заповнити (пропуск)

**finally** [ˈfaɪnəli] нарешті

**find** [faɪnd] (*found, found*) знаходити

**to find out** виявляти



**fine** [faɪn] чудовий, хороший  
**finish** [ˈfɪnɪʃ] закінчувати  
**fire** [ˈfaɪə] вогонь, вогнище  
**fireplace** [ˈfaɪəpleɪs] камін  
**first** [fɜːst] перший  
**at first** спочатку  
**fit** [fɪt] *v.* підходити; *adj.* 1. здатний, придатний; 2. в хорошій формі, бадьорий  
**flat** [flæt] квартира  
**flight** [flaɪt] політ  
**flour** [ˈflaʊə] борошно  
**flu(e)** [fluː] грип  
**fly** (flew, flown) [flaɪ], [fluː], [flaʊn] літати  
**fold** [ˈfəʊld] *n.* складка; *v.* складати, згинати  
**folk** [fəʊk] народний  
**follow** [ˈfɒləʊ] йти слідом, наслідувати, повторювати  
**following** [ˈfɒləvɪŋ] наступний  
**fond** [fɒnd] люблячий  
**to be fond of smth/smb** захоплюватися чимось/кимось  
**food** [fuːd] їжа  
**fool** [fuːl] (somebody) дурачити когось  
**foolish** [ˈfuːlɪʃ] нерозумний  
**foot** [fʊt] (feet [fiːt]) ступня  
**foreign** [ˈfɔːrɪn] закордонний  
**forest** [ˈfɒrɪst] ліс  
**forget** [fəˈget] (forgot, forgotten) забувати  
**fork** [fɔːk] виделка  
**form** [fɔːm] *n.* 1. клас; 2. форма, анкета; *v.* складати  
**founder** [ˈfaʊndə] засновник  
**France** [frɑːns] Франція  
**free** [friː] вільний  
**free time** вільний час  
**freedom** [ˈfriːdəm] свобода, воля  
**French** [frentʃ] французький  
**fresh** [freʃ] свіжий  
**fridge** [frɪdʒ] холодильник  
**friend** [frend] друг  
**friendly** [ˈfrendli] по-дружньому  
**friendship** [ˈfrendʃɪp] дружба  
**frog** [frɒg] жаба  
**from** [frɒm] від  
**front** [frʌnt] передній  
**in front of smth** перед чимось  
**frost** [frɒst] мороз

**fruit** [fruːt] фрукт  
**fry** [ˈfraɪ] смажити  
**full** [fʊl] повний, наповнений  
**to be full of smth** бути наповненим чимось  
**furniture** [ˈfɜːmtʃə] меблі  
**future** [ˈfjuːtʃə] *n.* майбутнє; *adj.* майбутній

## G

**gallery** [ˈgæləri] галерея  
**game** [geɪm] гра  
**garden** [ˈgɑːdn] сад  
**gate** [ˈgeɪt] ворота  
**gather** [ˈgæðə] збирати(сь)  
**German** [ˈdʒɜːmən] німецький  
**Germany** [ˈdʒɜːməni] Німеччина  
**get** [get] (got, got) отримувати  
**to get on a train (bus)** сісти в поїзд (автобус)  
**to get out of a car** вийти з машини  
**to get ready** приготуватися  
**to get to** дістатися до, доїхати до, дійти до  
**to get off a train** зійти з поїзда  
**to get sunburn** загоряти  
**to get together** зібратися разом  
**to get to know** дізнатися  
**to get up** встати, прокинутись  
**gift** [ɡɪft] подарунок  
**give** [ɡɪv] (gave, given) давати  
**glad** [glæd] радий, задоволений  
**to be glad** бути задоволеним  
**glue** [ɡluː] *n.* клей; *v.* клеїти  
**go** [ɡəʊ] (went, gone) йти, ходити  
**to go in for sports** займатися спортом  
**to be going to** збиратися (мати намір) щось робити  
**goal** [ɡəʊl] ціль, мета  
**goalkeeper** [ˈɡəʊlkiːpə] воротар  
**God** [ɡɒd] Бог  
**gold** [ɡəʊld] золото  
**gold coin** золота монета  
**grammar** [ˈɡræmə] *n.* граматики; *adj.* граматичний  
**grass** [ɡrɑːs] трава  
**great** [ɡreɪt] великий  
**Great!** = Wonderful! Чудово!  
**Greece** [ɡriːs] Греція  
**Greek** [ɡriːk] грек; грецький  
**green** [ɡriːn] зелений  
**greengrocer** [ˈɡriːnɡrəʊsə] продавець овочів та фруктів



**at the greengrocer's** в овочевому магазині (відділі)

**greet** [gri:t] вітати(сь)

**greeting** ['gri:tɪŋ] привітання

**ground** ['graʊnd] земля, ґрунт

**on the ground floor** на першому поверсі

**group** [gru:p] *n.* група; *v.* групувати

**grow** [grəʊ] (grew, grown) рости

**guess** [ges] здогадуватись

**guest** [gest] гість

**guitar** [ɡɪ'tɑ:] гітара

**gum** [ɡʌm] гума

**gym** [dʒɪm] спортивний зал

## H

**half (halves)** [hɑ:f] ([hɑ:vz]) половина (половини)

**hall** [hɔ:l] зал

**Hallowe'en** [ˌhæləʊ'i:n] Галовін (31 жовтня)

**ham** [hæm] шинка

**hamburger** [ˈhæmbɜ:ɡə] гамбургер

**handicraft** [ˈhændɪkra:ft] ручна праця

**hang** [hæŋ] (hung, hung) вішати

**to hang up the phone** вішати трубку

**happen** [ˈhæpən] траплятись

**hard-working** [ˌhɑ:d'wɜ:kɪŋ] працелюбний, наполегливий

**hare** [heə] заєць

**harmful** [ˈhɑ:mfəl] шкідливий

**have (has)** [hæv] ([hæz]) (had, had) мати

**to have a look** подивитись

**to have to (has to)** мати необхідність щось зробити

**to have for lunch (supper)** мати на обід, вечерю

**to have meals** приймати їжу

**to have rest** відпочивати

**he** [hi:] він

**head** [hed] голова

**headache** [ˈhedɪk] головний біль

**headline** [ˈhedlaɪn] заголовок

**health** [ˈhelθ] здоров'я

**healthy** [ˈhelθi] здоровий

**hear** [hiə] (heard, heard) чути, почути

**heart** [hɑ:t] серце

**help** [help] *n.* допомога; *v.* допомагати

**to help about the house** допомагати по дому

**her** [hɜ:] її

**here** [hiə] тут

**hero** [ˈhɪərəʊ] герой

**Hi!** [haɪ] привіт

**hide** [haɪd] (hid, hidden) (с)ховати

**hide-and-seek** [ˈhaɪdəndˈsi:k] гра у схованки

**high** [haɪ] *adj.* високий; *adv.* високо

**hill** [hɪl] пагорб

**historic** [hɪs'tɒrɪk] історичний

**history** ['hɪstəri] історія

**hit** [hɪt] (hit, hit) вдаряти, попадати в ціль

**hobby** ['hɒbi] хобі, улюблене заняття

**hold** [həʊld] (held, held) тримати

**holiday** ['hɒlɪdi] свято

**holidays** ['hɒlɪdɪz] канікули

**homestay** [ˈhəʊmsteɪ] проживання в (чиємусь) домі (сім'ї)

**to be on homestay** проживати в сім'ї

**honest** ['ɒnɪst] чесний

**honey** [ˈhʌni] *n.* мед; *adj.* медовий, солодкий

**honour** ['ɒnə] честь

**in honour of** на честь

**hope** [ˈhəʊp] *n.* надія; *v.* сподіватись

**host** [ˈhəʊst] господар, хазяїн, власник

**hot** [hɒt] спекотний, гарячий

**hour** [ˈaʊə] година

**household** [ˈhaʊzhəʊld] домашнє господарство

**housewife** ['haʊzwaɪf] домогосподарка

**how** [haʊ] як

**How are you?** Як справи?

**How do you do?** Добрий день!

**How do you like it?** Як вам це подобається?

**how long** як довго

**how many** скільки (з обчисл. іменниками)

**how much** (з необчисл. іменниками)

**How much does it cost?** Скільки це коштує?

**how often** як часто

**human** [ˈhju:mən] *n.* людина; *adj.* людський

**hundred** [ˈhʌndrɪd] сотня

**hungry** [ˈhʌŋɡri] голодний

**hunt** [hʌnt] полювати

**hurry** [ˈhʌɪ] поспішати

**Hurry up!** Поспіши!

**hurt** [hɜ:t] (hurt, hurt) (по)ранити, завдавати болю

**husband** [ˈhʌzbənd] чоловік



**ice** [aɪs] лід  
**ice cream** [ˌaɪsˈkri:m] морозиво  
**idea** [aɪˈdɪə] думка, ідея  
**ill** [ɪl] хворий  
**to be ill** хворіти  
**illness** [ˈɪlnɪs] хвороба  
**imagine** [ɪˈmædʒɪn] уявляти  
**immigrant** [ˈɪmɪgrənt] іммігрант  
**important** [ɪmˈpɔ:tənt] важливий  
**impression** [ɪmˈpreʃən] враження  
**improve** [ɪmˈpru:v] покращувати, удосконалювати  
**in** [ɪn] в, через  
**in the afternoon** опівдні  
**in the morning** вранці  
**inch** [ɪntʃ] дюйм (біля 2,5 см)  
**indeed** [ɪnˈdi:d] насправді  
**independence** [ɪndɪˈpendəns] незалежність  
**independent** [ɪndɪˈpendənt] незалежний  
**indoors** [ˌɪnˈdɔ:z] у приміщенні  
**information** [ˌɪnfəˈmeɪʃn] інформація  
**inside** [ɪnˈsaɪd] всередині  
**interested** [ˈɪntrɪstɪd] зацікавлений  
**to be interested in smth** цікавитись чимось  
**interesting** [ˈɪntrɪstɪŋ] цікавий  
**international** [ˌɪntəˈneɪʃnl] міжнародний  
**Internet** [ˈɪntənət] інтернет, світова комп'ютерна мережа  
**interview** [ˈɪntəvju:] *n.* інтерв'ю; *v.* брати інтерв'ю  
**to do an interview** робити інтерв'ю  
**into** [ˈɪntu] в (напрямок)  
**introduce** [ˌɪntrəˈdju:s] відрекомендовувати, знайомити  
**introduction** [ˌɪntrəˈdʌkʃn] 1. вступ; 2. знайомство  
**invitation** [ˌɪnvɪˈteɪʃn] запрошення  
**invite** [ɪnˈvaɪt] запрошувати  
**iron** [ˈaɪən] *n.* праска; *v.* прасувати  
**irregular** [ɪˈregjələ] неправильний  
**island** [ˈaɪlənd] острів  
**issue** [ˈɪʃju:] видання, випуск, номер (журналу тощо)  
**it** [ɪt] він, вона, воно (*heіctoma*)  
**It is raining (snowing) hard now.** Падає сильний дощ (сніг).

**It often rains (snows) here.** Тут часто йде дощ (сніг).  
**It was nice meeting you.** Було приємно зустрітись з вами.  
**Italian** [ɪˈtæliən] італійський  
**Italy** [ˈɪtəli] Італія

## J

**January** [ˈdʒænjʊərɪ] січень  
**Japan** [dʒəˈpæn] Японія  
**Japanese** [ˌdʒæpəˈni:z] японський  
**Jesus Christ** [ˌdʒi:zəsˈkraɪst] Ісус Христос  
**job** [dʒəʊb] робота  
**join** [dʒɔɪn] 1. приєднувати(сь); 2. вступати  
**joke** [dʒəʊk] жарт  
**journalist** [ˈdʒɜ:nəlɪst] журналіст  
**journey** [ˈdʒɜ:nɪ] подорож  
**joy** [dʒɔɪ] радість  
**jug** [dʒʌg] глечик  
**July** [dʒʊˈlaɪ] липень  
**jump** [dʌmp] стрибати  
**June** [dʒu:n] червень  
**junior** [ˈdʒu:nɪə] молодший, молодшого віку  
**just** [dʒʌst] 1. щойно; 2. якраз

## K

**keep** [ki:p] (kept, kept) тримати, утримувати, зберігати  
**to keep fit** підтримувати (фізичну) форму  
**key** [ki:] ключ  
**kick** [kɪk] ударяти, бити ногою  
**kid** [kɪd] дитина (розм.)  
**kill** [kɪl] вбивати  
**kilometre** [ˈkɪləˌmɪ:tə] кілометр  
**kind** [kaɪnd] *n.* вид, сорт; *adj.* добрий  
**It's very kind of you.**  
**king** [kɪŋ] король  
**kiss** [kɪs] *n.* поцілунок; *v.* цілувати  
**kitten** [ˈkɪtn] котеня  
**knife (knives)** [naɪf] ([ˈnaɪvz]) ніж (ножі)  
**knock** [nɒk] *n.* стук; *v.* стукати  
**know** [nəʊ] (knew, known) знати  
**knowledge** [ˈnɒlɪdʒ] знання

## L

**lake** [leɪk] озеро  
**lamp** [læmp] лампа  
**land** [lænd] *n.* земля, країна; *v.* приземлятись



**language** [ˈlæŋɡwɪdʒ] мова  
**lantern** [ˈlæntən] ліхтар  
**large** [lɑːdʒ] великий  
**last** [lɑːst] 1. останній, минулий; 2. тривати  
**at last** нарешті  
**late** [leɪt] *adj.* пізній  
**laugh** [lɑːf] сміятись  
**lazy** [ˈleɪzi] лінивий  
**leaf** [liːf] (**leaves** [liːvz]) листок (листя)  
**leaflet** [ˈliːflɪt] 1. листок; 2. листівка  
**learn** [lɜːn] (**learnt, learnt**) 1. (ви)вчити; 2. дізнатися  
**to learn by heart** вивчати напам'ять  
**(the) least** [liːst] *adj.* найменший; *adv.* найменш  
**leave** [liːv] (**left, left**) залишати, покидати  
**to leave for school** виходити з дому до школи  
**left** [left] лівий  
**on(to) the left** наліво  
**less** [les] менше  
**lesson** [lesn] урок  
**at/in the lesson** на уроці  
**letter** [ˈletə] лист  
**library** [ˈlaɪbrəri] бібліотека  
**at the library** у бібліотеці  
**lie** [laɪ] брехня, неправда  
**lie** [laɪ] (**lay, lain**) *v.* лежати, спочивати  
**to lie in the sun** загаряти  
**life** [laɪf] життя  
**lifestyle** [ˈlaɪfstɑɪl] стиль життя  
**light** [laɪt] світлий  
**line** [laɪn] лінія  
**list** [lɪst] список  
**listen to smb/smt** [lɪsn] слухати  
**literature** [ˈlɪtərətʃə] література  
**look** [lʊk] дивитись  
**to look for** шукати  
**to look happy (ill, tired, etc.)** виглядати щасливим (хворим, змученим, т.д.)  
**to look out** виглядати (з чогось)  
**to look through** проглядати  
**to look around** оглядати(сь)  
**to look at** подивитись  
**to look like** бути схожим  
**lose** [luːz] (**lost, lost**) (за)губити  
**to be (get) lost** заблукати  
**lots of, a lot of** [lɒts] багато  
**loud** [laʊd] голосний

**love** [lʌv] кохання  
**to fall in love** [tʊ ˈfɔːl ɪn ˈlʌv] закохатись  
**to be in love** бути закоханим  
**lovely** [ˈlʌvli] чудовий, гарний  
**luck** [lʌk] удача  
**lunch** [lʌntʃ] обід

## M

**magazine** [ˌmæɡəˈziːn] журнал  
**magic** [ˈmædʒɪk] чарівний  
**mail** [meɪl] *n.* пошта; *v.* надсилати поштою  
**by mail** поштою  
**main** [meɪn] головний  
**make** [meɪk] (**made, made**) (з)робити,  
**many** [ˈmeni] багато  
**map** [mæp] карта  
**March** [mɑːtʃ] березень  
**mark** [mɑːk] оцінка  
**marry (smb)** [ˈmæri] одружуватись  
**marvelous** [ˈmɑːvələs] чудовий  
**machine** [məˈʃiːn] машина  
**mask** [mɑːsk] маска  
**master** [ˈmɑːstə] *n.* господар, хазяїн; *v.* оволодівати (знанням, навиком)  
**match** [mætʃ] *n.* матч; *v.* підібрати до пари  
**maths** [mæθs] математика  
**May** [meɪ] травень  
**may** [meɪ] можна  
**May I do it?** Можна мені це зробити?  
**maybe** [ˈmeɪbi] можливо, може бути  
**me** [miː] мене, мені  
**meal** [miːl] прийом їжі, їжа  
**mean** [miːn] (**mean, meant**) 1. означати; 2. мати на увазі; 3. хотіти сказати  
**meaning** [ˈmiːnɪŋ] значення  
**medicine** [ˈmedɪsn] 1. медицина (необчисл.); 2. ліки (обчисл.)  
**meet** [miːt] (**met, met**) зустрічати(сь), знайомити(сь)  
**meeting** [ˈmiːtɪŋ] зустріч, збори  
**on meeting** при зустрічі  
**member** [ˈmembə] член  
**mend** [mend] ремонтувати, штопати  
**message** [ˈmesɪdʒ] послання, повідомлення  
**metre** [ˈmiːtə] метр  
**middle** [ˈmɪdl] *n.* середина; *adj.* середній



**in the middle of smth** в середині

чогось

**midnight** [ˈmɪdnaɪt] *n.* середина ночі

**at midnight** *adv.* опівночі

**million** [ˈmɪljən] мільйон

**minute** [ˈmɪnɪt] хвилина

**mirror** [ˈmɪrə] дзеркало

**Miss** [mɪs] міс (*незаміжня жінка*)

**mix** [mɪks] змішувати

**model** [ˈmɒdl] модель, зразок

**Monday** [ˈmʌndi] понеділок

**on Monday evening** в понеділок  
увечері

**monkey** [ˈmʌŋki] мавпа

**month** [mʌnθ] місяць (*календарний*)

**moon** [mu:n] місяць (у небі)

**more** [mɔ:] більше

**no more / any more** більше не  
(*запер.*) / більше (*питал.*)

**mosquito** [məˈski:təʊ] комар

**most** [məʊst] більшість

**motherland** [ˈmʌðələnd] батьківщина

**mountain** [ˈmaʊntɪn] гора

**mountain biking** гірський велоспорт

**mouth** [maʊθ] рот

**move** [mu:v] рухати(сь), переїжджати

**to move in(to)** переїхати в

**Mr** [ˈmɪstə] містер

**Mrs** [ˈmɪsɪz] місис (*заміжня жінка*)

**Ms** [mɪz] пані (*невідомо, заміжня чи ні*)

**much** [mʌtʃ] багато (з *незчислюв.*  
*іменниками*)

**museum** [mju:ˈziəm] музей

**mushroom** [ˈmʌʃru:m] гриб

**music** [ˈmju:zɪk] музика

**musical** [ˈmju:zɪkəl] музичний

## N

**narrator** [nəˈreɪtə] оповідач

**nation** [ˈneɪʃn] нація

**national** [ˈnæʃənl] національний

**nationality** [ˌnæʃəˈnælɪti]  
національність

**native** [ˈneɪtɪv] рідний (*мова, місто*),  
корінний (*житель*)

**natural** [ˈnætʃrəl] природний

**natural resources** природні ресурси

**nature** [ˈneɪtʃə] природа

**near** [ˈnɪə] біля

**near here** поблизу

**nearly** [ˈnɪəli] майже

**necessary** [ˈnesəsəri] необхідно

**need** [ni:d] потребувати

**needle** [ni:dl] голка

**neighbour** [ˈneɪbə] *n.* сусід; *adj.*

Сусідній

**nephew** [ˈneɪju:] племінник

**net** [net] сітка

**never** [ˈnevə] ніколи

**new** [nju:] новий

**New Zealand** [nju:ˈzi:lənd] Нова  
Зеландія

**newspaper** [ˈnju:spetpə] газета

**next** [nekst] наступний

**next to** поряд з

**nickname** [ˈnɪkneɪm] прізвисько

**night** [naɪt] ніч

**noise** [nɔɪz] шум

**noisy** [ˈnɔɪzi] шумний

**North** [ˈnɔ:θ] північ

**in the north** на півночі

**Northern** [ˈnɔ:ðən] північний

**November** [nəʊˈvembə] листопад

**nowadays** [ˈnaʊədeɪz] сьогодні

**nuclear** [ˈnju:kliə] ядерний

**nuclear weapon** ядерна зброя

**number** [ˈnʌmbə] число, номер

**nurse** [nɜ:s] няня, доглядальниця,  
медсестра

## O

**ocean** [ˈəʊʃən] океан

**Pacific Ocean** [prəˈsɪfɪkˈəʊʃən] Тихий  
океан

**October** [ɒkˈtəʊbə] жовтень

**of** [əv] прийменник родового відмінку

**of course** [əvˈkɔ:s] звичайно,  
безперечно

**off** [ɒf] прислівник, що вказує на  
віддалення

**to be off** забратись, піти геть

**office** [ˈɒfis] офіс, кабінет, державна  
установа

**often** [ɒfn] часто

**oh** [əʊ] ой

**Oh, my!** Боже мій!

**Oh, no!** вигук із значенням  
шкодування, співчуття

**oil** [ˈɔɪl] олія

**old** [əʊld] старий

**on** [ɒn] на

**to be on** бути включеним

**once** [wʌns] одного разу

**at once** відразу

**once upon a time** колись, одного  
разу (*на початку казки*)

**there once was** був собі якось



**open** ['əʊpən] відкривати  
**or** [ɔ:] або  
**orange** ['brɪndʒ] апельсин  
**orange juice** апельсиновий сік  
**original** [ə'ɹɪdʒɪnəl] 1. початковий; 2. первісний  
**order** ['ɔ:də] порядок  
**in order** в порядку  
**origin** ['ɔrɪdʒɪn] походження  
**other** ['ʌðə] інший  
**the other day** іншого дня  
**our** ['aʊə] наш  
**out** [aʊt] назовні  
**outdoors** [aʊt'dɔ:z] надворі, на свіжому повітрі  
**outdoor activities** види розваг на свіжому повітрі  
**outside** ['aʊtsaɪd] біля, ззовні, поза чимось  
**over** ['əʊvə] над  
**to be over** закінчуватись  
**overcoat** ['əʊvəkəʊt] пальто  
**own** ['əʊn] власний  
**oxygen** ['ɒksɪdʒən] кисень

## P

**page** [peɪdʒ] сторінка  
**paint** [peɪnt] малювати фарбами  
**painter** ['peɪntə] художник  
**painting** ['peɪntɪŋ] 1. побілка; 2. картина; 3. живопис  
**pal** [pæl] друг (розм.)  
**palace** ['pælɪs] палац  
**pancake** ['pæŋkeɪk] оладка  
**paper** ['peɪpə] 1. папір; 2. газета  
**papers** ['peɪpəz] 1. газети, журнали; 2. документи  
**parade** [pə'reɪd] парад  
**parcel** ['pɑ:sl] посилка  
**Paris** ['pærɪs] Париж  
**park** [pɑ:k] *n.* парк; *v.* паркувати (авто)  
**parrot** ['pærət] папура  
**part** [pɑ:t] 1. частина; 2. деталь  
**participant** [pɑ:'tɪsɪpənt] учасник  
**party** ['pɑ:ti] вечірка, свято  
**at the party** на святі (вечірці)  
**pass** [pɑ:s] передавати  
**passenger** ['pæsɪndʒə] пасажир  
**past** [pɑ:st] *prep.* після; *adj.* минулий  
**patient** ['peɪjənt] терплячий  
**pastime** ['pɑ:staɪm] приємне проведення часу, розвага, гра

**pay (for smth)** (paid, paid) [peɪ] платити (за щось)  
**PT (Physical Training)** ['pi: 'ti:] фізичне виховання  
**peddler** ['pedlə] вуличний рознощик товарів  
**pence** [pens] пенси (множ.)  
**pencil** ['pensɪl] олівець  
**penny** ['peni] пені  
**people** ['pi:pl] 1. люди; 2. народ  
**perform** [pə'fɔ:m] 1. представляти (*виставу*); 2. виконувати  
**performance** [pə'fɔ:məns] вистава  
**performer** [pə'fɔ:mə] виконавець  
**perhaps** [pə'hæps] можливо  
**person** [pɜ:sn] людина, особистість  
**personal** ['pɜ:snl] особистий  
**phrase** [freɪz] фраза  
**plan** [plæn] *n.* план; *v.* планувати  
**plane** [pleɪn] літак  
**pick** [pɪk] збирати, рвати (*квіти*)  
**picture** ['pɪktʃə] 1. картина, малюнок; 2. фото (*амер.*)  
**piece** [pi:s] шматок  
**pity** ['pɪti] жаль  
**planet** ['plænɪt] планета  
**plant** [plɑ:nt] *n.* рослина; *v.* саджати  
**plasticine** ['plæstɪsɪn] пластилін  
**play** [pleɪ] *n.* пе'са; *v.* грати(сь)  
**to play a part** грати роль  
**to play the guitar** грати на гітарі  
**to play volleyball** грати у волейбол  
**pleasant** ['pleznt] приємний  
**pleasure** ['plezə] приємність, задоволення  
**for pleasure** для задоволення  
**poem** ['pəʊɪm] вірш  
**poet** ['pəʊɪt] поет  
**point** [pɔɪnt] вказувати  
**policeman** [pə'li:smən] поліцейський  
**polite** [pə'laɪt] ввічливий  
**pollute** [pə'lju:t] забруднювати  
**pollution** [pə'lju:ʃən] забруднення  
**poor** [pʊə] бідний  
**popular with smb** ['pɒpjələ] популярний  
**post office** ['pəʊst,offis] пошта  
**poster** ['pəʊstə] постер  
**postman** ['pəʊstmən] поштар  
**pot** [pɒt] горщик, каструля  
**potato (potatoes)** [pə'tetəʊ] картопля



**pound** [paʊnd] фунт  
**practise in** [ˈpræktɪs] практикуватися  
 в чомусь  
**prefer** [prɪˈfɜː] віддавати перевагу  
**preparation** [ˌpreɪəˈreɪʃn]  
 приготування  
**prepare for smth** [prɪˈpeə]  
 готуватися до чогось  
**preposition** [ˌpreɪpəˈzɪʃn] прийменник  
**present** [ˈpreznt] *n.* подарунок; *v.*  
 дарувати. представляти  
**pretend** [prɪˈtend] прикидатись,  
 удавати  
**pretty** [ˈprɪti] гарненький  
**price** [praɪs] ціна  
**prince** [prɪns] принц  
**princess** [prɪnˈses] принцеса  
**print** [prɪnt] друкувати  
**prize** [praɪz] приз  
**problem** [ˈprɒbləm] проблема  
**promise** [ˈprɒmɪs] обіцяти  
**pronoun** [ˈprəʊnaʊn] займенник  
**pronounce** [prəˈnaʊns] вимовляти  
**pronunciation** [prəˌnʌnsiˈeɪʃn] вимова  
**proper** [ˈprɒpə] відповідний,  
 правильний  
**proud** [praʊd] гордий, з почуттям  
 гідності  
**be proud of** пишатись  
 (кимось / чимось)  
**prove** [pruːv] доводити  
**proverb** [ˈprɒvɜːb] прислів'я  
**public** [ˈpʌblɪk] *n.* публіка; *adj.*  
 публічний, громадський  
**pudding** [ˈpʊdɪŋ] пудинг  
**puddle** [ˈpʌdl] калюжа  
**pull** [pʊl] тягнути (на себе)  
**puppet** [ˈpʌpɪt] маріонетка, лялька  
**push** [pʊʃ] штовхати (від себе)  
**put** [put] (put, put) класти, ложити  
**to put on smth** одягати щось  
**to put smth in order** розкласти по  
 порядку

## Q

**quarter** [ˈkwɔːtə] чверть  
**at a quarter past** чверть після  
**at a quarter to** чверть до  
**queen** [kwɪn] королева  
**question** [ˈkwestʃn] питання  
**quick** [kwɪk] швидкий  
**quickly** [ˈkwɪklɪ] швидко  
**quiet** [ˈkwaɪət] тихий, спокійний

**railway station** [ˈreɪlweɪˌsteɪʃən]  
 залізнична станція  
**rainforest** [ˈreɪnˌfɒrɪst] тропічний ліс  
**rainy** [ˈreɪni] дощовий  
**rare** [reə] 1. рідкий; 2. рідкісний  
**rather** [ˈrɑːðə] досить  
**read** [riːd] (read, read) читати  
**reader** [ˈriːdə] читач  
**ready** [ˈredi] готовий  
**real** [riəl] реальний, справжній  
**really** [ˈriəli] насправді  
**reason** [ˈriːzn] причина  
**receive** [rɪˈsiːv] отримувати  
**recently** [ˈriːsntli] недавно  
**recipe** [ˈresɪpi] рецепт  
**record** [ˈrekɔːd] *n.* запис (на аудіо,  
 відео); *v.* записувати  
**recycle** [ˌriːˈsaɪkl] переробляти  
 вторинну сировину  
**refrigerator** [rɪˈfrɪdʒəreɪtə]  
 холодильник  
**region** [ˈriːdʒən] район, область  
**regular verbs** [ˈregjələˈvɜːbz]  
 правильні дієслова  
**rehearsal** [rɪˈhɜːsəl] репетиція  
**relation** [rɪˈleɪʃn] зв'язок, стосунок  
**relationship** [rɪˈleɪʃənʃɪp] родинний  
 зв'язок  
**relative** [ˈrelatɪv] родич  
**relax** [rɪˈlæks] розслаблятися,  
 відпочивати  
**religious** [rɪˈlɪdʒəs] релігійний  
**remember** [rɪˈmembə] пам'ятати  
**remind** [rɪˈmaɪnd] нагадувати  
**repair** [rɪˈpeə] робити ремонт  
**report** [rɪˈpiːt] *n.* репортаж,  
 повідомлення; *v.* передавати,  
 повідомляти  
**reported** [rɪˈpɔːtɪd] переданий,  
 повідомлений  
**reporter** [rɪˈpɔːtə] репортер  
**resource** [rɪˈsɔːs] ресурс  
**rest** [rest] *n.* відпочинок; *v.*  
 відпочивати  
**retell** [rɪˈtel] переказувати  
**return** [rɪˈtɜːn] повертатись  
**review** [rɪˈvjuː] повторювати  
 (material)  
**rhyme** [raɪm] римування  
**rice** [raɪs] рис  
**rich** [rɪtʃ] багатий



**ride** [raɪd] (rode, ridden) їздити на  
(коні, велосипеді тощо)  
**right** [raɪt] правий, правильний  
**right away** відразу  
**region** [ˈrɪdʒən] район  
**rise** [raɪz] (rose, risen) вставати,  
підніматись  
**river** [ˈrɪvə] річка  
**road** [ˈrəʊd] дорога  
**rock** [rɒk] скеля  
**rock climbing** скелелазіння  
**role play** [ˈrəʊlpleɪ] рольова гра  
**roll** [rɒl] котити(ся)  
**roots** [ruːts] коріння  
**rope** [rəʊp] мотузка  
**rubbish** [ˈrʌbɪʃ] сміття  
**rucksack** [ˈrʌksæk] рюкзак  
**round** [raʊnd] навколо  
**royal** [ˈrɔɪəl] королівський  
**rubber** [ˈrʌbə] 1. гума; 2. гумка  
**rule** [ruːl] правило

## S

**sadly** [ˈsædli] сумно  
**safe** [seɪf] безпечний  
**sail** [seɪl] плавати  
**sailor** [ˈseɪlə] моряк  
**saint (snt., st.)** [seɪnt] ([snt]) святий  
**salad** [ˈsæləd] салат  
**salesman** [ˈseɪlzmən] продавець  
**salt** [sɔːlt] сіль  
**salty** [ˈsɔːlti] солоний  
**same** [seɪm] такий самий  
**at the same time** в той самий час  
**the same** той самий  
**Saturday** [ˈsetədi] субота  
**save** [seɪv] 1. рятувати; 2. зберігати;  
3. заощаджувати  
**say** [seɪ] сказати  
**Say it right.** Скажи правильно.  
**scene** [siːn] сцена  
**scenery** [ˈsiːnəri] декорації  
**school** [skuːl] *n.* школа; *adj.* шкільний  
**science** [ˈsaɪəns] наука  
**scuba diving** підводне плавання  
**sea** [siː] море  
**seaman** [ˈsiːmən] моряк  
**seaside** [ˈsiːsaɪd] морське узбережжя  
**at the seaside** на морському  
узбережжі  
**seat** [siːt] місце, сидіння  
**second** [ˈsekənd] другий

**secret** [ˈsiːkɪt] секрет  
**secretary** [ˈsekrətəri] секретар  
**section** [ˈsekʃn] секція, розділ  
**See you later.** Побачимося пізніше.  
**Let me see.** Дайте подумати.  
**seem** [siːm] здаватись  
**sell** [sel] (sold, sold) продавати  
**send** [send] (sent, sent) відсилати,  
надсилати  
**sentence** [ˈsentəns] речення  
**separate** [ˈseprɪt] окремий  
**September** [səpˈtembə] вересень  
**serious** [ˈsɪəriəs] серйозний  
**serve** [sɜːv] 1. служити; 2.  
обслуговувати  
**set** [set] (set, set) 1. встановлювати  
(час, правило); 2. накривати  
на стіл  
**several (times)** [ˈsevrəl] декілька разів  
**sew** [səʊ] шити  
**shall** [ʃæl] буду, будемо, будуть  
**Shall I do it?** Мені це зробити?  
**shape** [ʃeɪp] форма  
**share** [ʃeə] ділитись  
**to share impressions** ділитися  
враженнями  
**shark** [ʃɑːk] акула  
**sheet** [ʃiːt] простирадло  
**a sheet of paper** листок паперу  
**shelf** [ʃelf] полицка  
**shine** [ʃaɪn] (shone, shone [ʃɒn])  
світити  
**ship** [ʃɪp] корабель  
**short** [ʃɔːt] короткий  
**for short** скорочено  
**shoulder** [ˈʃəʊldə] плече  
**shout (at smb)** [ʃaʊt] кричати (на  
когось)  
**show** [ʃəʊ] *n.* шоу, показ; *v.* показувати  
**shower** [ˈʃaʊə] душ  
**to have/take a shower** приймати душ  
**sick** [sɪk] хворий  
**side** [saɪd] сторона  
**sightseeing tour** [ˈsaɪt,siːŋˈtʊə]  
екскурсія по визначних місцях  
**sign** [saɪn] *n.* знак, сигнал *v.*  
підписувати, розписуватись  
**silly** [ˈsɪli] дурний, нерозумний  
**silver** [ˈsɪlvə] срібний  
**simple** [ˈsɪmpl] простий  
**since** [sɪns] з тих пір як  
**single (ticket)** [sɪŋɡl] квиток в один бік  
**size** [saɪz] розмір



**skill** [skɪl] 1. уміння, здатність; 2. досвід, майстерність; 3. талант, здібності; 4. знання, розуміння, обізнаність  
**skin** [skɪn] шкіра  
**slice** [slaɪs] скибка  
**slim** [slɪm] тонкий, стрункий, тендітний  
**slow** [sləʊ] повільний  
**smart** [smɑ:t] розумний, нарядний  
**smell** [smel] *n.* запах; *v.* (smelt, smelt) нюхати  
**smoke** [sməʊk] *n.* дим; *v.* палити  
**snake** [sneɪk] змія  
**sneeze** [sni:z] чхати  
**snow** [snəʊ] сніг  
**snowball** [ˈsnəʊbɔ:l] сніжка  
**snowman** [ˈsnəʊmən] снігова баба  
**to make a snowman** робити снігову бабу.  
**so** [ˈsəʊ] таким чином; так  
**So many countries in the world!** Так багато країн у світі!  
**soft** [sɒft] м'який  
**some** [sʌm] декілька, трохи  
**sometimes** [ˈsʌmtaɪms] деколи  
**soon** [su:n] скоро  
**Sorry!** [ˈsɒri] Вибачте!  
**to be sorry** жалкувати за чимось  
**soul** [saʊl] душа  
**sound** [saʊnd] *n.* звук; *v.* звучати  
**soup** [su:p] суп  
**sour cream** [ˈsaʊəˈkri:m] сметана  
**South** [ˈsaʊθ] південь  
**Southern** [ˈsʌðən] південний  
**space** [speɪs] космос  
**spaceship** [ˈspeɪʃɪp] космічний корабель  
**Spain** [speɪn] Іспанія  
**Spanish** [ˈspæniʃ] іспанський  
**speak** [spi:k] (spoke, spoken) розмовляти  
**special** [ˈspeʃəl] особливий, спеціальний  
**spectator** [spekˈteɪtə] глядач  
**spell** [spel] (spelt, spelt) писати по буквах  
**spelling** [ˈspelɪŋ] написання, правопис, орфографія  
**spend** [spend] (spent, spent) 1. проводити (час); 2. витрачати  
**spin** [spɪn] *n.* веретено; *v.* вертити, крутити

**spoon** [spu:n] ложка  
**sports ground** [ˈspɔ:tsgraʊnd] спортивний майданчик  
**square** [skweə] *n.* 1. квадрат; 2. площа; *adj.* квадратний  
**in the square** на площі  
**stage** [steɪdʒ] сцена  
**on the stage** на сцені  
**stairs** [steəz] сходи  
**stamp** [stæmp] *n.* марка  
**stand** [stænd] (stood, stood) стояти  
**star** [stɑ:] зірка  
**start** [stɑ:t] починати  
**to start on (a newspaper...)** започатковувати, засновувати  
**stay** [steɪ] зупинятись, перебувати  
**to stay at a hotel** зупинися в готелі  
**to stay with smb** залишитися в когось  
**stick** [stɪk] *n.* палка; *v.* клеїти  
**still** [stɪl] все ще  
**stone** [stəʊn] камінь  
**store** [stɔ:] магазин (великий)  
**storm** [stɔ:m] шторм, буря  
**straight** [streɪt] прямо  
**straight ahead** прямо вперед  
**strange** [ˈstreɪndʒ] дивний  
**straw** [strɔ:] солома, соломинка  
**string** [strɪŋ] струна  
**strong** [strɒŋ] сильний  
**study** [ˈstʌdi] навчатись  
**subject** [ˈsʌbdʒɪkt] предмет  
**success** [səkˈses] успіх  
**suddenly** [ˈsʌdnli] раптом  
**suitcase** [ˈsu:tkeɪs] чемодан  
**sunny** [ˈsʌni] сонячний  
**supermarket** [ˈsjʊ:pəˌmɑ:kit] супермаркет  
**support** [səˈpɔ:t] підтримувати  
**sure** [ʃʊə] впевнений  
**surfing** [ˈsɜ:fɪŋ] серфінг  
**surname** [ˈsɜ:neɪm] прізвище  
**surprise** [səˈpraɪz] сюрприз  
**sweater** [ˈswetə] светр  
**sweep** [swi:p] (swept, swept) підмітати  
**sweet** [swi:t] солодкий  
**swim** [swɪm] (swam, swum) плавати  
**swimming pool** [ˈswɪmɪŋˌpu:l] басейн  
**symbol** [ˈsɪmbəl] символ  
**symptom** [ˈsɪmptəm] симптом  
**synonym** [ˈsɪnɒnɪm] синонім  
**system** [ˈsɪstəm] система



## T

**tail** [teɪl] хвіст  
**take** [teɪk] (took, taken) брати, взяти  
**to take care (of)** піклуватися, турбуватися (про)  
**to take (catch) a train (bus, plane)** сісти (встигнути) на поїзд (автобус, літак)  
**to take part** взяти участь  
**to take after** бути схожим (на когось)  
**tale** [teɪl] історія, розповідь  
**talented** [ˈtæləntɪd] талановитий  
**talk** [tɔːk] *n.* розмова; *v.* розмовляти  
**tall** [tɔːl] високий  
**tape** [teɪp] плівка  
**tape recorder** [ˈteɪp rɪˌkɔːdə] магнітофон  
**taste** [teɪst] *n.* смак; *v.* смакувати  
**tasty** [ˈteɪsti] смачний  
**teach** [tiːtʃ] (taught, taught) навчати  
**team** [tiːm] команда  
**tear** [ˈteə] (**tore, torn**) [tɔː], [tɔːn] рвати  
**tell** [tel] (told, told) розповідати  
**to tell a lie** говорити неправду  
**to tell fairy tales** розповідати казки  
**to tell the truth** говорити правду  
**temperature** [ˈtemprətʃə] температура  
**terrible** [ˈterəbl] жахливий  
**test** [test] 1. випробування; 2. тест  
**Thames, the** [temz] Темза  
**than** [ðæn] ніж  
**thank** [θæŋk] дякувати  
**Thank God!** Слава Богу!  
**thankful** [ˈθæŋkful] вдячний  
**that** [ðæt] що  
**That's a great (good) ideal** Це чудова ідея!  
**That's a pity!** Як шкода!  
**That's why** Ось чому  
**theatre** [ˈθɪətə] театр  
**their** [ðeə] їх  
**them** [ðem] їм, про них, їх  
**theme** [θiːm] тема  
**then** [ðen] потім  
**there** [ðeə] там  
**these** [ðiːz] ці  
**They say...** Говорять...  
**thing** [θɪŋ] річ  
**think** [θɪŋk] (thought, thought) думати  
**thirsty** [ˈθɜːsti] спраглий  
**though** [ðəʊ] хоча

**thought** [θɔːt] думка  
**thousand** [ˈθaʊzənd] тисяча  
**thread** [θred] нитка  
**through** [θruː] через, крізь  
**to look through** проглядати  
**throw** [ˈθrəʊ] (threw, thrown) кидати  
**Thursday** [ˈθɜːzdi] четвер  
**ticket** [ˈtɪktɪ] квиток  
**tidy** [ˈtaɪdi] охайний  
**tie** [taɪ] *n.* краватка; *v.* зав'язувати  
**tiger** [ˈtaɪɡə] тигр  
**time** [taɪm] час  
**three times a day** тричі на день  
**to tell the time** повідомляти час  
**timetable** [ˈtaɪm,teɪbl] розклад  
**on the timetable** у розкладі  
**tired** [ˈtaɪəd] змучений  
**to be tired of** змучитися від  
**tiring** [ˈtaɪərɪŋ] стомливий  
**tissue** [ˈtɪʃjuː] тонка тканина, тонкий обгортковий папір  
**title** [ˈtaɪtl] заголовок, назва  
**together** [təˈɡeðə] разом  
**toilet** [ˈtɔɪlɪt] туалет  
**tomorrow** [təˈmɒrəʊ] завтра  
**tongue** [tʌŋ] язик  
**tonight** [təˈnaɪt] сьогодні увечері  
**too** [tuː] також  
**toothache** [ˈtuːθeɪk] зубний біль  
**top** [tɒp] верхівка  
**at the top of** на верхівці  
**topic** [ˈtɒpɪk] тема  
**touch** [ˈtʌtʃ] 1. *n.* дотик, торкання; 2. контакт; *v.* торкатись  
**towel** [ˈtaʊəl] рушник  
**tower** [ˈtaʊə] башта  
**town** [taʊn] місто  
**toy** [tɔɪ] іграшка  
**tradition** [trəˈdɪʃn] традиція  
**traditional** [trəˈdɪʃnəl] традиційний  
**train** [treɪn] 1. *n.* поїзд; 2. *v.* тренуватись, навчатись  
**on the train** в поїзді;  
**travel** [ˈtrævl] подорож; подорожувати  
**to travel by plane** подорожувати літаком  
**trip** [trɪp] поїздка  
**trouble** [ˈtrʌbl] проблема, турбота  
**troublesome** [ˈtrʌbəlsəm] 1. що завдає клопоту; 2. клопітний  
**true** [truː] справжній



**try** [traɪ] намагатись  
**to try on** приміряти  
**to try our best** намагатись робити  
 все можливе  
**Tuesday** ['tju:zdi] вівторок  
**on Tuesday morning** у вівторок  
 зранку  
**tummy ache** ['tʌmi,eɪk] біль у животі  
**turn** [tɜ:n] повертати(сь)  
**to turn off** виключати  
**to turn on** включати  
**to turn to the left** повертати наліво  
 (направо)

**twice** [twɑ:ɪs] двічі  
**twice** [twɑ:ɪs] двічі  
**typist** ['taɪpɪst] секретар-машиністка

## U

**ugly** ['ʌɡli] негарний  
**Ukraine** [ju:'kreɪn] Україна  
**Ukrainian** [ju:'kreɪniən] український  
**uncle** ['ʌkl] дядько  
**uncountable** [ʌn'kaʊntəbl] необчислюваний  
**under** ['ʌndə] під  
**underground** [ʌndə'graʊnd] *n.* метро,  
 підземний перехід; *adv.* під  
 землею  
**underline** [ʌndə'laɪn] підкреслювати  
**understand** [ʌndə'stænd] (understood, understood)  
 розуміти  
**uniform** ['ju:nɪfɔ:m] форма, спецодяг  
**the United Kingdom** [ju:'naɪtɪd'kɪŋdəm] Об'єднане Королівство  
 (Великобританія)  
**the United States** Сполучені Штати  
**the Universe** ['ju:nɪvɜ:s] Всесвіт  
**up** [ʌp] вверх  
**upper** ['ʌpə] верхній  
**upstairs** [ʌp'steɪz] наверх  
**us** [ʌs] нас, нам, нами  
**use** [ju:z] використовувати  
**useful** ['ju:sfʊl] корисний  
**usual** ['ju:ʒʊəl] звичайний, звичний  
**usually** ['ju:ʒʊəli] звичайно

## V

**vacation** [və'keɪʃn] канікули  
**vacuum cleaner** ['vækjuəm,kli:nə] пилосос  
**vegetable** ['vedʒɪtəbl] овоч  
**vendor** ['vend] вуличний торговець  
**victory** ['vɪktəri] перемога

**view** [vju:] 1. вид, вигляд; 2. точка зору

**village** ['vɪlɪdʒ] село

**vinegar** ['vɪnɪɡə] оцет

**violin** ['vaɪəlɪn] скрипка

**vocabulary** [və'kæbjʊləri] словник, словниковий запас

**voice** ['vɔɪs] голос

**volleyball** ['vɒlibɔ:l] волейбол

**vote** [vəʊt] голосувати, обирати

## W

**wait** [weɪt] чекати, очікувати

**waiter** ['weɪtə] офіціант

**wake up** ['weɪk ʌp] (woke up, woken up) вставати

**walk** [wɔ:k] *n.* прогулянка; *v.* йти пішки, прогулюватись

**wall** [wɔ:l] стіна

**wallpaper** ['wɔ:l,peɪpə] шпалери

**want** [wɒnt] хотіти

**war** [wɔ:] війна

**wardrobe** ['wɔ:drəʊb] шафа для одягу

**warm** [wɔ:m] теплий

**wash** [wɒʃ] мити(сь), прати

**watch** [wɒtʃ] дивитись, спостерігати

**water** ['wɔ:tə] вода

**way** [weɪ] шлях, дорога

**way of life** стиль життя

**weak** [wi:k] слабкий

**weapon** ['wepən] зброя

**wear** [weə] (wore, worn) носити (про одяг), бути вдягнутим

**weather** ['weðə] погода

**Wednesday** ['wenzdi] середа

**weekend** [wi:k'end] вихідні, кінець тижня, вікенд

**at the weekend** у вікенд

**welcome** ['welkʌm] 1. Ласкаво просимо. 2. (при)вітати

**well-arranged** [welə'reɪndʒd] добре впорядкований

**west** [west] захід

**western** ['westən] західний

**what** [wɒt] що

**when** [wen] коли

**where** [weə] де

**which** [wɪtʃ] який, котрий

**while** [waɪl] поки, під час того, як

**whisper** ['wɪspə] шепотіти

**white** [waɪt] білий

**who** [hu:] хто



**whole** [həʊl] цілий, весь  
**whom** [hu:m] кому, ким, кого?  
**whose** [hu:z] чий  
**why** [waɪ] чому  
**wide** [waɪd] широкий  
**wife** [waɪf] дружина  
**wild** [waɪld] дикий  
**wildlife** ['waɪldlaɪf] жива природа  
**Wimbledon** ['wɪmbəldən] Уїмблдон  
**win** [wɪn] (won, won) перемагати, вигравати  
**to win a game** виграти гру  
**to win a prize** виграти приз  
**to win a victory** здобути перемогу  
**wind** [waɪnd] вітер  
**window** ['wɪndəʊ] вікно  
**windy** ['wɪndɪ] вітряно  
**winner** ['wɪnə] переможець  
**wise** [waɪz] мудрий  
**wish** [wɪʃ] *n.* бажання; *v.* бажати  
**witch** [wɪtʃ] відьма  
**with** [wɪð] з  
**without** [wɪˈðaʊt] без  
**wolf** [wʊlf] (**wolves** [wʊlvz]) вовк (вовки)  
**woman** (**women**) ['wʊmən] ([ˈwɪmɪn]) жінка (жінки)

**wonder** [ˈwʌndə] *n.* диво; *v.* дивуватись, хотіти знати  
**wonderful** [ˈwʌndəfəl] чудовий  
**wood** [wʊd] 1. дерево; 2. ліс  
**wooden** [ˈwʊdn] дерев'яний  
**wool** [wʊl] *n.* вовна; *adj.* вовняний  
**word** [wɜ:d] слово  
**work** [wɜ:k] робота; працювати  
**to work out** розробити (план); скласти (документ)  
**worker** [ˈwɜ:kə] робочий  
**world** [wɜ:ld] *n.* світ; *v.* світовий  
**worry** [ˈwʌrɪ] хвилювати(сь)  
**worse** [wɜ:s] гірший  
**wrap** [ræp] *n.* обгортка; *v.* обгортати  
**write** [raɪt] (wrote, written) писати  
**writer** [ˈraɪtə] письменник  
**written** [ˈrɪtn] письмовий  
**in written form** письмово  
**wrong** [rʊŋ] неправильний, зіпсутий

## Y

**year** [jɪə] рік  
**yesterday** [ˈjestədi] вчора  
**yet** [jet] ще  
**young** [jʌŋ] молодий



be [bi:]	.....was [wɒz], were [wə:]	.....been [bi:n]	.....бути
beat [bi:t]	.....beat [bi:t]	.....beaten ['bi:tn]	.....бити
become [bi'kʌm]	.....became [bi'keɪm]	.....become [bi'kʌm]	.....ставати, стати
bite [baɪt]	.....bit [bɪt]	.....bitten [bɪtn]	.....кусати
break [breɪk]	.....broke [brəʊk]	.....broken ['brəʊk(ə)n]	.....ламати(сь)
bring [brɪŋ]	.....brought [brɔ:t]	.....brought [brɔ:t]	.....приносити
buy [baɪ]	.....bought [bɔ:t]	.....bought [bɔ:t]	.....купувати
catch [kætʃ]	.....caught [kɔ:t]	.....caught [kɔ:t]	.....ловити, схоплювати
choose [tʃu:z]	.....chose [tʃəʊz]	.....chosen ['tʃəʊzn]	.....вибирати
come [kʌm]	.....came [keɪm]	.....come [kʌm]	.....приходити
do [du:]	.....did [dɪd]	.....done [dʌn]	.....робити
drink [drɪŋk]	.....drank [dræŋk]	.....drunk [drʌŋk]	.....пити
eat [i:t]	.....ate [æt]	.....eaten ['i:tn]	.....їсти
feel [fi:l]	.....felt [felt]	.....felt [felt]	.....відчувати
fight [faɪt]	.....fought [fɔ:t]	.....fought [fɔ:t]	.....боротись
find [faɪnd]	.....found [faʊnd]	.....found [faʊnd]	.....знаходити
go [gəʊ]	.....went [went]	.....gone [gɒn]	.....йти, ходити
have [hæv]	.....had [hæd]	.....had [hæd]	.....мати
hit [hɪt]	.....hit [hɪt]	.....hit [hɪt]	.....потрапляти
hold [həʊld]	.....held [held]	.....held [held]	.....тримати
know [nəʊ]	.....knew [nju:]	.....known [nəʊn]	.....знати
leave [li:v]	.....left [left]	.....left [left]	.....залишати
light [laɪt]	.....lit [lɪt]	.....lit [lɪt]	.....запалювати
	.....lighted ['laɪtɪd]	.....lighted ['laɪtɪd]	.....запалювати
lose [lu:z]	.....lost [lɒst]	.....lost [lɒst]	.....губити
make [meɪk]	.....made [meɪd]	.....made [meɪd]	.....робити
read [ri:d]	.....read [red]	.....read [red]	.....читати
see [si:]	.....saw [sɔ:]	.....seen [si:n]	.....бачити
send [send]	.....sent [sent]	.....sent [sent]	.....надсилати
speak [spi:k]	.....spoke [speʊk]	.....spoken ['spəʊkn]	.....говорити
swim [swɪm]	.....swam [swæm]	.....swum [swʌm]	.....плавати
take [teɪk]	.....took [tʊk]	.....taken ['teɪkn]	.....брати, взяти
teach [ti:tʃ]	.....taught [tɔ:t]	.....taught [tɔ:t]	.....навчати
throw [θrəʊ]	.....threw [θru:]	.....thrown [θrəʊn]	.....кидати
win [wɪn]	.....won [wʌn]	.....won [wʌn]	.....вигравати, перемагати
write [raɪt]	.....wrote [rəʊt]	.....written ['rɪtn]	.....писати





Навчально-методичний комплект для 6-го класу загальноосвітніх навчальних закладів.

До комплекту входять:

- підручник
- робочий зошит
- аудіододаток
- методичний посібник